# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A Who's who? word order in questions</td>
<td>common verb phrases, classroom language</td>
<td>vowel sounds, the alphabet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>B Who knows you better? present simple</td>
<td>family, personality adjectives</td>
<td>third person and plural -s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C At the Moulin Rouge present continuous</td>
<td>the body, prepositions of place</td>
<td>vowel sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>D The Devil’s Dictionary defining relative clauses (a person who..., a thing which...)</td>
<td>expressions for paraphrasing: like, for example, etc.</td>
<td>pronunciation in a dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>PRACTICAL ENGLISH At the airport</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>WRITING Describing yourself</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>REVISE &amp; CHECK What do you remember? What can you do?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2 | A Right place, wrong time past simple regular and irregular verbs | holidays | -ed endings, irregular verbs |
| 18 | B A moment in time past continuous | prepositions of time and place at, in, on | /ə/ |
| 20 | C Fifty years of pop questions with and without auxiliaries | question words, pop music | /w/ and /h/ |
| 22 | D One October evening so, because, but, although | verb phrases | the letter a |
| 24 | PRACTICAL ENGLISH At the conference hotel |  |  |
| 25 | WRITING The story behind a photo |  |  |
| 26 | REVISE & CHECK What do you remember? What can you do? |  |  |

| 3 | A Where are you going? going to, present continuous (future arrangements) | look (after, for, etc.) | sentence stress |
| 30 | B The pessimist’s phrase book will / won’t (predictions) | opposite verbs | contractions (will / won’t), /w/ and /ə/ |
| 32 | C I’ll always love you will / won’t (promises, offers, decisions) | verb + -ing | word stress: two-syllable words |
| 34 | D I was only dreaming review of tenses: present, past, and future | verbs + prepositions | sentence stress |
| 36 | PRACTICAL ENGLISH Restaurant problems |  |  |
| 37 | WRITING An informal letter |  |  |
| 38 | REVISE & CHECK What do you remember? What can you do? |  |  |

| 4 | A From rags to riches present perfect (experience) + ever, never: present perfect or past simple? | clothes | vowel sounds |
| 42 | B Family conflicts present perfect simple + yet, just, already | verb phrases | /w/, /j/, and /dʒ/ |
| 44 | C Faster, faster! comparatives, as... as / less... than... | time expressions: spend time, waste time, etc | sentence stress |
| 46 | D The world’s friendliest city superlatives (+ ever + present perfect) | opposite adjectives | word stress |
| 48 | PRACTICAL ENGLISH Lost in San Francisco |  |  |
| 49 | WRITING Describing where you live |  |  |
| 50 | REVISE & CHECK What do you remember? What can you do? |  |  |

<p>| 5 | A Are you a party animal? uses of the infinitive (with to) | verbs + infinitive | word stress |
| 54 | B What makes you feel good? verb + -ing | verbs describing emotions | -ing |
| 56 | C How much can you learn in a month? have to, don’t have to, must, mustn’t | modifiers: a bit, really, etc. | sentence stress |
| 58 | D The name of the game expressing movement | prepositions of movement, sport | prepositions |
| 60 | PRACTICAL ENGLISH At a department store |  |  |
| 61 | WRITING A formal e-mail |  |  |
| 62 | REVISE &amp; CHECK What do you remember? What can you do? |  |  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>If something bad can happen, it will</td>
<td><em>if</em> + present; <em>will</em> + infinitive (first conditional)</td>
<td>confusing verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Never smile at a crocodile</td>
<td><em>if</em> + past; <em>would</em> + infinitive (second conditional)</td>
<td>animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Decisions, decisions</td>
<td><em>may</em> / <em>might</em> (possibility)</td>
<td>word building: noun formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>What should I do?</td>
<td><em>should</em> / <em>shouldn’t</em></td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>PRACTICAL ENGLISH</td>
<td>At the pharmacy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>WRITING</td>
<td>Writing to a friend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>REVISE &amp; CHECK</td>
<td>What do you remember? What can you do?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Famous fears and phobias</td>
<td>present perfect + <em>for</em> and <em>since</em></td>
<td>guessing meaning from context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Born to direct</td>
<td>present perfect or past simple?</td>
<td>biographies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>I used to be a rebel</td>
<td>used to</td>
<td>school subjects: history, geography, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>The mothers of invention</td>
<td>passive</td>
<td>verbs: invent, discover, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>PRACTICAL ENGLISH</td>
<td>A boat trip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>WRITING</td>
<td>Describing a building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>REVISE &amp; CHECK</td>
<td>What do you remember? What can you do?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>I hate weekends!</td>
<td><em>something, anything, nothing, etc.</em></td>
<td>adjectives ending in -ed and -ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>How old is your body?</td>
<td>quantifiers, <em>too</em>, <em>not enough</em></td>
<td>health and lifestyle: wear sunscreen, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>Waking up is hard to do</td>
<td>word order of phrasal verbs</td>
<td>phrasal verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>‘I’m Jim. ‘So am I.’</td>
<td><em>so</em> / <em>neither</em> + auxiliaries</td>
<td>similarities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>PRACTICAL ENGLISH</td>
<td>On the phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>WRITING</td>
<td>Giving your opinion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>REVISE &amp; CHECK</td>
<td>What do you remember? What can you do?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>What a week!</td>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>adverbs: suddenly, immediately, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Then he kissed me</td>
<td>reported speech</td>
<td><em>say</em>, <em>tell</em>, or <em>ask?</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Look out for Study Link**

This shows you where to find extra material for more practice and revision.
Who’s who?

1 INTRODUCING YOURSELF

a. Introduce yourself to all the other students. Try to remember their names.
Hello, I'm. Hi, I'm. Nice to meet you.

b. Can you remember? Does anybody in the class have…?
- a very long name
- a very short name
- a name that's difficult to spell
- an unusual name
- the same name as a famous person from your country
- a very traditional name
- the same name as another student

2 GETTING TO KNOW EACH OTHER

a. Complete the groups of questions 1–5 below with a verb.

b. Listen and repeat the FREE TIME questions. Copy the rhythm.

c. In pairs, ask and answer the questions.
Can you find two things you have in common?
We live in the city centre and we do yoga.

1 HOME AND FAMILY

Where ___ you from?
Where do you ___?
Do you ___ any brothers and sisters?

2 JOB/STUDIES

Where do you ___?
What school / university do you ___ to?
Do you ___ your job?
What year ___ you in?
Do you ___ any foreign languages? Which?

3 FREE TIME

What kind of music do you ___ to?
Do you ___ a musical instrument? Which?
Do you ___ TV? What programmes?
Do you ___ any sport or exercise? What?
What books or magazines do you ___?

4 THE FUTURE

Where are you going to ___ after the class?
What are you going to ___ this weekend?

5 THE PAST

Where ___ you born?
Where did you ___ English before?
What did you ___ last summer?
3 GRAMMAR  word order in questions
a Can you remember the questions? Re-order the words.
   1 from are you where?
   2 watch you do TV?
   3 to music you what kind of listen do?
   4 English where you before did study?
   5 are do what you weekend going this to?

b ☐ p.126 Grammar Bank 1A. Read the rules and do the exercises.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING
a 12 Listen and choose a or b.

Days of the week
1 What day of the week is the exam?
a Tuesday  b Thursday
2 What day is it today?
a Sunday  b Monday

Telling the time
3 What’s the time?
a 8.35  b 9.25
4 What time does the class start?
a 9.45  b 10.15

The date
5 When was the woman born?
a 21st August  b 23rd August
6 What day does he want tickets for?
a 5th June  b 5th July

Numbers
7 What number is the house?
a 117  b 170
8 How much are the flowers?
a €15  b €50

b In pairs, ask and answer the questions.
What day is it today?
What days do you have your English class?
What time does the class start and finish?
What’s the time now?
When’s your birthday?
What’s the date today?
What’s the number of your house or flat?

5 CLASSROOM LANGUAGE
a Complete the teacher’s and student’s phrases.
Please ______ your mobile.
Sorry, could you ______ that, please?

b ☐ p.144 Vocabulary Bank Classroom language.

6 PRONUNCIATION  vowel sounds, the alphabet
a How do you pronounce the letters of the alphabet below? Use the sound pictures to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>K</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Complete the alphabet chart with these letters.
W G Y R J X O

c Practise saying the letters of the alphabet.
d Listen to your teacher. Write the words.
e Play What does it mean?

What does ‘awful’ mean?  Very bad.
How do you spell it?  A-W-F-U-L.
1 VOCABULARY family and adjectives

a Can you remember these words?
Do the puzzle in pairs.
1 The opposite of thin or slim is …
2 Your brother’s wife is your …
3 Your sister’s daughter is your …
4 Your mother’s brother is your …
5 Your aunt’s children are your …
6 The opposite of fair is …
7 The opposite of short is …
8 Your brothers, sisters, cousins, etc. are your …

b What’s the ‘mystery word’?


2 READING

a Who do you think knows you better, your family or your friends? Why?

b Read the introduction to the article.
1 Who is Richard?
2 Who is Danny?
3 What do Richard’s mum and Danny try to do?
4 What does Richard have to do?

c Now read what Richard says. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the false ones.
1 He sometimes travels with his job. T
2 He’s friendly and extroverted.
3 He likes music and parties.
4 He prefers women who are shorter than him.
5 He likes women who talk a lot.
6 He doesn’t talk to his family about girls.
7 His mother doesn’t think he’s good at choosing girlfriends.

d Guess the meaning of the highlighted words or phrases.

Richard Tayler with his mother Meg and his friend Danny

He usually works in England but sometimes I work abroad too. When I’m not working I like going to the cinema and eating in nice restaurants. I’m not very sporty and I don’t do any exercise, but at least I don’t smoke.

I think I’m open and friendly – I get on well with most people – but I’m sometimes quite shy too. For example, I don’t like going to parties. I prefer to meet friends individually or in small groups.

I like intelligent, funny women who make me laugh, and ideally who love music. Physically I prefer women with dark hair who are not taller than me. And I like women who are good listeners.

I’m sure that my friend Danny knows me better than my family because we often talk about girlfriends and the problems we have. I don’t usually talk to my family about that kind of thing. My mum always says that I look for the wrong kind of girl but that’s what mothers always say!
3 GRAMMAR  present simple

a Complete the questions about Richard.

1 Where does he live?
   In Southampton.
2 What do he do?
   He's a musician.
3 Where smoke?
   No, he doesn't.
4 exercise?
   No, he doesn't. He isn't very sporty.
5 What kind of women?
   Intelligent and funny ones.
6 to his mother about girls?
   No, he doesn't.

b p.126 Grammar Bank 1B. Read the rules and do the exercises.

c Cover the text. In pairs, try to remember five things about Richard.
   He lives in Southampton.

d Look at the photos of Claire and Nina.

5 PRONUNCIATION

a 1.5 Listen and repeat.

b How do you say the *he*/*she*/*it* form of these verbs?
   choose  cook  go  know  stop  teach

b How do you say the plural of these nouns?
   book  friend  girl  language  niece  parent  party

d 1.6 Listen and repeat the verbs and nouns.

6 SPEAKING

a Work in pairs, A and B. Think of a person you know well, a family member or a friend, who is single. You are going to tell your partner about him/her. Look at the chart below and prepare what you are going to say.

- NAME?
- AGE?
- JOB/STUDIES?
- LIVES IN?
- PHYSICAL APPEARANCE?
- PERSONALITY?
- SMOKES?
- LIKES?
- DOESN'T LIKE?

b A describe your person to B.
   B listen and ask for more information. Do you know anybody who would be a good partner for this person? Then swap roles.
At the Moulin Rouge

1 VOCABULARY  the body

a Look at this painting. Do you like it? Why (not)?
b Label the woman’s face with words from the box.
   ear  eyes  hair  lips  mouth  neck  nose
c p.146 Vocabulary Bank  The body.
d In pairs, how many words can you remember in two minutes?

2 PRONUNCIATION  vowel sounds

a Look at the sound pictures. What are the words and sounds?
b 17 Put the words in the correct columns. Listen and check.
   arms  bite  ears  eyes  head  hear  heart
   nose  shoulders  smell  stomach  touch
c p.157 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings for these sounds.

3 GRAMMAR  present continuous

a Look at the painting At the Moulin Rouge. In pairs, ask and answer the questions.
   1 What clothes are the people wearing?
   2 What are the people at the table doing?
   3 What are the two women at the back doing?
   4 What are the two men at the back doing?
   5 Describe the woman on the right. What do you think she’s doing?
   6 One of the people in the painting is the artist, Toulouse-Lautrec. Which person do you think he is?

   I think the artist is the tall man who is sitting between the two women.

b Underline the correct form of the verb.
   1 In the picture the men wear / are wearing hats.
   2 In Britain women often wear / are wearing hats at weddings.
   3 Karina usually sits / is sitting at the front of the class.
   4 Today she sits / is sitting at the back.

c p.126 Grammar Bank 1C. Read the rules and do the exercises.

4 LISTENING

a 18 Listen to a guide in an art gallery talking about At the Moulin Rouge. Answer the questions.
   1 What was the Moulin Rouge famous for?
   2 Who did Toulouse-Lautrec include in his paintings and posters?
   3 Which person is Toulouse-Lautrec?
   4 Why do some people think he liked painting the dancers?

b Listen again. Write the numbers of the people next to their names.
   Toulouse-Lautrec
   His cousin Gabriel
   His friend, a photographer
   Jane Avril, a dancer
   La Macarona, a dancer
   La Goulue, a singer
5 SPEAKING

a Match the prepositions with the pictures.

behind  between  in  in front of  in the middle  next to
on  on the left  on the right  opposite  under

b Communication Describe and draw A p.108 B p.112. Describe your picture for your partner to draw.

c In small groups, ask and answer the questions.
1 Do you paint or draw? What kind of things?
2 Do you have a favourite painter? Who?
3 Do you have a favourite painting? What?
   Can you describe it?
4 What pictures or posters do you have on the wall
   in your bedroom or living room?

d Look again at the paintings in this lesson (here
   and on p.108 and p.112). Which one would you
   choose to have in your house or flat?

6 1.9 SONG Ain’t got no – I got life
The Devil’s Dictionary

1 READING

a. Look at the dictionary definition. What do you think the missing word is?

_____ a person who puts metal in your mouth and takes coins out of your pocket.

b. Read the text once. Where is the definition from?

A different kind of dictionary

AMBROSE BIERCE was a 19th-century American author and journalist. His most popular book is probably the Devil’s Dictionary, written between 1881 and 1887. Bierce’s dictionary does not contain normal definitions—his definitions are funny and cynical. For example, in a normal dictionary, the definition of dentist is ‘a kind of doctor who looks after people’s teeth’. But in the Devil’s Dictionary, the definition of a dentist is ‘a person who puts metal in your mouth and takes coins out of your pocket’. Today on the Internet you can find many websites with more modern versions of the Devil’s Dictionary.

A different kind of dictionary

c. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who was Ambrose Bierce?
2. What is the normal definition of ‘dentist’?
3. Where can you find modern versions of the Devil’s Dictionary?

d. In pairs, think of normal definitions for these words or phrases.

a bank a boring person the brain a star a friend a secret

e. Now match the words/phrases in d to these cynical definitions.

1. _____ is a person who works all her life to become famous and then wears sunglasses so people don’t recognize her.
2. _____ is something which you only tell one person.
3. _____ is somebody who talks about himself when you want to talk about yourself.
4. _____ is somebody who dislikes the same people as you.
5. _____ is a place where you can borrow money only if you can show that you don’t need it.
6. _____ is something which starts working when you get up in the morning and stops working when you get to work or school.
3 LISTENING
a  1.10 Listen to the introduction to a TV game show, What's the word? How do you play the game?

b  1.11 Now listen to the show. Write down the six answers.
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  

c  1.12 Listen and check your answers.

4 VOCABULARY paraphrasing
a  What's the best thing to do if you're talking to someone in English and you don't know a word that you need?
   a  Panic and stop talking.
   b  Try to mime the word.
   c  Try to explain what you mean using other words you know.

b  1.13 Complete the useful expressions with these words. Then listen and check.
   example how kind like opposite person place similar somebody thing

Useful expressions
explaining a word that you don't know

1  It's ________ who works in a restaurant.
2  It's the ________ who takes the food from the kitchen to the tables.
3  It's a ________ where you go when you want to buy something.
4  It's a ________ which you use to talk.
5  It's a ________ of machine.
6  It's the ________ of fat.
7  It's ________ thin, but it means thin and attractive.
8  It's ________ to worried.
9  It's ________ you feel when you have a lot of things to do.
10 For ________ you do this with the TV.

c  Complete the definitions for these words.
1  a tourist  It's somebody...
2  a sports centre  It's a place...
3  a key  It's a thing...
4  worried  It's how you feel...
5  laugh  You do this...

5 SPEAKING
a  Look at part of a crossword. Ask your teacher for a definition of 1 across and 2 down.

b  Communication Crossword A p.108 B p.112. Give each other definitions to complete the missing words in the crossword.

6 PRONUNCIATION using a dictionary
a  Look at the two dictionary extracts. How do you pronounce the words?
   busy /ˈbəzi/ adj ecupé
   guitar /ɡɪˈtɑːr/ n a musical instrument with strings

   The apostrophe(’) shows stress. The stressed syllable is the one after the apostrophe.

b  Look carefully at the pronunciation of the words below. Practise saying them correctly.
   laugh /lɑːf/  eyes /aɪz/  example /ɪgˈzæmpl/
   keys /kiːz/  kind /kʌnd/  eighteen /ˈeɪtiːn/

   The Sound Bank on p.156 can help you use your dictionary better.
At the airport

THE STORY SO FAR
1.14 Listen to the story of Mark and Allie. Answer the questions.
1 Where are Mark and Allie from?
2 What company do they work for?
3 Where did they meet?
4 What did they do?
5 Did they get on well?
6 What’s Mark doing now?

AT IMMIGRATION
a 1.15 Cover the dialogue and listen. How long is Allie going to stay in the United States?

YOU HEAR
Good evening, madam.
Where are you arriving from?
The purpose of your visit?
How long are you staying in the US?
Are you staying with your family or a friend?
Do you have his phone number?
This your first visit to the US?
Enjoy your stay in San Francisco.

YOU SAY
A week. In San Francisco. At the Pacific View Hotel. Yes, Mark Ryder. He’s a colleague – and a friend. Yes, his mobile is 405 655 7182.
Yes, it is. Thank you.

b Listen again. Complete the YOU HEAR phrases.
c 1.16* Listen and repeat the YOU SAY phrases. Copy the rhythm.
d In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. A (book open) you’re the immigration officer, B (book closed) you’re Allie. Swap roles.

SOCIAL ENGLISH
Allie arrives
a 1.17 Listen. Answer the questions.
1 How long was Allie’s flight?
2 Why couldn’t she sleep?
3 What time is it...?
a in San Francisco b in London
4 Where is Mark going to take her?
5 Where’s Mark’s car?
b Complete the USEFUL PHRASES. Listen again and check.

c 1.18 Listen and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

USEFUL PHRASES
M You look good!
M How was the flight?
M You must be really tired.
M I’m so pleased you came!
A It’s great to see you again.

US English parking lot
UK English car park
a Read the e-mail. The computer has found ten mistakes. They are either grammar, punctuation, or spelling. Can you correct them?

From: Alessandra [alessandra@andes.com.ar]
To: Daniel [dani2199@yahoo.com]
Subject: Hi from Argentina

Hi Daniel,

My name's Alessandra. It's an Italian name, because my grandmother was from Italy, but I'm Argentinian and I live in Mendoza, a big city in the west of the country. I live with my parents and my two brothers. I have 19 years old, and I'm at university. I'm studying computer science. I'm in my first year and I really like it.

I'm going to tell you about myself. As you can see from the foto, I have long hair - it's quite fair - and green eyes. I wear glasses, but I want to get contact lenses soon.

I think I'm a positive person. I'm quite extrovert and friendly. My mother says I'm very talkative - I think she means that I talk too much!

In my free time I love reading and going to the cinema. But I don't have much free time because I have classes every day, and a lot of work to do even at weekends. I also go to English classes on Friday afternoon.

Please write soon and tell me about you and your life.

Best wishes

Alessandra

b Read the e-mail again from the beginning. Then cover it and answer the questions from memory.

1. Where's Alessandra from?
2. Why does she have an Italian name?
3. Where does she live?
4. Who does she live with?
5. What does she do?
6. What colour are her eyes?
7. Is she shy?
8. What are her favourite free time activities?
9. When does she go to English classes?

WRITE a similar e-mail about you. Write four paragraphs.
1. name, nationality, age, family, work / study
2. physical appearance
3. personality
4. hobbies and interests

CHECK the e-mail for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).

Do you know these 'e-mail' verbs?
open reply
close send
save print
delete
1 What do you remember?

GRAMMAR
Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What’s ______ name?
  a. yours  b. your  c. you

1. A What _____?
   B I’m a student.
   a. you  b. do you  c. do you work

2. Where _____ from?
   a. your parents are
   b. is your parents
   c. are your parents

3. ______ David smoke?
   a. Does  b. Is  c. Do

4. Liz _____ at a primary school.
   a. teach  b. teaches  c. teaches

5. Sonia _____ a job.
   a. hasn’t  b. doesn’t have  c. don’t have

6. ______ a picture in your bedroom?
   a. Is there  b. Is it  c. There is

7. The girl in the painting ______
   a. blue dress.
   b. wears  c. is wearing

8. You don’t need an umbrella. It ______.
   a. isn’t raining  b. doesn’t rain  c. not raining

9. She’s the woman ______ works in the office.
   a. what  b. which  c. who

10. I need a Workbook ______ has all the answers.
    a. what  b. which  c. who

VOCABULARY
a. classroom language
Complete the sentences with one word.
   Sit ______ and open your books.
   1. ______ do you say ‘coche’ in English?
   2. What does ‘abroad’ ______?
   3. Go ______ page 78, please.
   4. See you ______ Monday!
   5. ______ a good weekend.

b. word groups
Underline the word that is different.

   third  seventh  eighteen  twentieth

   1. uncle  grandfather  niece  husband
   2. shy  tall  dark  slim
   3. mean  unfriendly  lazy  generous
   4. arms  ears  eyes  fingers
   5. mouth  fair  head  nose

c. definitions
Read the definitions. Write the word.
   It’s the place where you sleep. ______
   1. It’s the opposite of lazy. ______
   2. It’s a place where you can buy stamps. ______
   3. It’s a person who plays a musical instrument. ______
   4. It’s a verb. You do it when you’re thirsty. ______
   5. It’s a kind of food, for example macaroni. ______

PRONUNCIATION
a. Underline the letter or word with a different sound.

   1. B  E  J  T

   2. abroad  walk  board  work

   3. person  word  third  heart

   4. hair  parents  hear  there

   5. give  shy  quiet  eyes

b. Underline the stressed syllable.
   information
   address  university  extrovert  stomach  example

10
What can you do?

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article and match the headings with paragraphs A–D.
  Space invaders
  Small children
  Conversation makers
  Nervous fliers

b Tick (√) the things the writer says.
  1 You can’t sleep if there are children next to you.
  2 Children eat all your food.
  3 Some people want to talk all through the flight.
  4 ‘Space invaders’ have long arms and legs.
  5 Nervous fliers have a drink every five minutes.

c What do the highlighted words mean? Circle a or b.
  1 a letting (toys) fall from your hand
     b putting (toys) somewhere
  2 a say hello to
     b know and understand
  3 a goes into the air
     b touches the ground
  4 a try to do something
     b give the impression of doing something
  5 a space
     b seat

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

a 1.19 Listen to five short conversations. Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.
  1 Her party is on __________.
    a Wednesday the 6th  b Saturday the 9th  c Friday the 8th
  2 How old is his mother?
    a 59  b 50  c 60
  3 Mr Jarvis has a problem in __________.
    a his left leg  b his right knee  c his left knee
  4 John doesn’t like the painting of __________.
    a the woman  b the boy  c the guitar
  5 The girl wants to buy __________.
    a a computer  b a digital camera  c a USB cable

b 1.20 Listen to Martha showing Jim some photos. Complete the sentences with a name.
  Martin  Alice  Bill  Serena  Gary
  1 __________ is at university.
  2 __________ doesn’t live in Britain.
  3 __________ wears glasses.
  4 __________ doesn’t like sport.
  5 __________ isn’t very hard-working.

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a Can you…? Yes (√)
  □ give personal information about yourself
  □ talk about a person in your family
  □ describe a picture you have in your house
  □ give definitions for these words
    □ journalist
    □ hospital
    □ guidebook
    □ aeroplane

b Complete the questions with is, are, do, or does.
  1 What kind of books ________ you read?
  2 ________ there an art gallery in your town? Where?
  3 What ________ your friends usually do at weekends?
  4 ________ your town have a local festival? When?
  5 What do you think your parents ________ doing at the moment?

c Ask your partner the questions in b. Ask for more information.
Right place, wrong time

1 VOCABULARY holidays

a In one minute, write down five things you like doing when you're on holiday.

b ➤ p.147 Vocabulary Bank Holidays.

The Holiday Magazine

In the right place... but at the wrong time!

Last week we asked you to tell us about a holiday when the destination was perfect but, for some reason, the time wasn't right... Here are some of your replies.

1 Tim, 20, student from Manchester
When I was a teenager I went on holiday with my parents to Brittany in France. My parents rented a lovely house on the beach, and the weather was great. But I was 17, and I didn't want to be on holiday with my mum and dad and my little brother. I wanted to be with my friends. We went to the beach every day and sunbathed and we went to a fantastic seafood restaurant for my birthday. But I was miserable and I hated every minute of it. I didn't smile once in two weeks. What really made me furious was that my parents let my older sister, who was 19, go to Spain with her friends.

2 Gabriela, 28, marketing manager from Rome
I'm from Rome and the summer here is really hot. So last year my husband and I decided to go to Sweden, to escape from the heat. We booked a 10-day holiday in Stockholm, where the temperature in the summer is normally about 20 degrees. But when we got to Stockholm there was a heatwave and it was 35 degrees every day. It was awful because there was no air-conditioning anywhere. We couldn't sleep at night - it was boiling in the hotel, and in the shops and museums too. We didn't want to go shopping or go sightseeing or do anything - we were too hot. We just sat in cafés and argued all day. We didn't need to go to Sweden to do that!

3 Kelly, 26, TV journalist from Belfast
Three years ago I broke up with my boyfriend and I decided to go on holiday on my own to the Seychelles. My travel agent told me that it was a wonderful place. But he didn't tell me that it was also a very popular place for people on their honeymoon. Everywhere I looked I saw couples holding hands and looking romantically into each other's eyes! The travel agent also said it was always sunny there - but the weather was terrible - it was cloudy and very windy. To pass the time I decided to do a diving course (one of my lifetime ambitions). But it was a complete disaster because the first time I went under the water I had a panic attack. I couldn't escape from the island so I spent an incredibly boring (and expensive) two weeks in 'paradise'.
2 READING
a Read the three letters to The Holiday Magazine and match them with the photos.

b Complete the sentences with Tim, Gabriela, or Kelly.
1 ______ wanted to go somewhere hot.
2 ______ wanted to go somewhere cool.
3 ______ had great food.
4 ______ wanted to forget somebody.
5 ______ had problems sleeping.
6 ______ wanted to go on holiday with different people.

c Find four adjectives in the article that mean very good and two that mean very bad. Underline the stressed syllable.
lovely (text 1)

3 GRAMMAR past simple regular and irregular
a What’s the past simple of these verbs? Are they regular or irregular? Check your answers with text 1.
be ______ go ______ rent ______
want ______ sunbathe ______ make ______ let ______

b Now underline the other + past simple verbs in texts 2 and 3. What are the infinitives?

c Underline two negative past simple verbs in the magazine article. How do you make negatives and questions in the past simple…?
- with normal verbs
- with was / were
- with could

d p.128 Grammar Bank 2A. Read the rules and do the exercises.

4 PRONUNCIATION regular and irregular verbs
A Remember! There are three possible pronunciations of regular -ed verbs.

a 2.1 Listen and repeat the sentences. When do you pronounce the e in -ed?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We booked a holiday.</th>
<th>We sunbathed.</th>
<th>They rented a house.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We walked to the hotel.</td>
<td>We argued all day.</td>
<td>We decided to go to Sweden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b How do you pronounce the past simple of these verbs?
- ask hate need smile stay talk

c 2.2 Listen and check.

d Circle the irregular verb with the different vowel sound.
1 bought saw told caught
2 put spoke took could
3 paid said made came

5 LISTENING
a 2.3 Listen to the story about Sean’s uncle and aunt. Why was the holiday a disaster?
1 Because the weather was awful.
2 Because the place was very noisy.
3 Because they argued a lot.

b Listen again. Correct the wrong information.
1 Sean went to Ibiza. His aunt and uncle went to Ibiza.
2 They’re about sixty.
3 They wanted an exciting holiday.
4 They usually spend their holidays abroad.
5 They knew it was ‘The Party Island’.
6 They first went there in the 1950s.
7 They booked the holiday at a travel agent’s.
8 The hotel was in a quiet part of town.
9 They’re going to go abroad again next year.

6 SPEAKING
a Think about your answers to these questions.

Your last holiday
Where / go? When?
Who / go with?
How / get there?
Where / stay?
How long / be / there?
/ have good weather?
What / do during the day?
/ have a good time?
/ have any problems?

b Work in pairs.
A Ask a partner about his / her holiday.
B Listen and ask for more information.
c Swap roles.
1 GRAMMAR  past continuous

a  Look at the photos. Where are they? What do you think
is happening?

b  Read the text and match paragraphs 1–3
with the photographs.

HARRY BENSON spent 50 years
taking dramatic and memorable
photographs for national newspapers and
magazines. Here he talks about three of
his best-known pictures.

1  I took this picture on August 9th 1974.
He was saying goodbye to his cabinet and the
White House staff after the ‘Watergate’ scandal.
All his family were standing round him. You can
see from their faces what they were feeling.

2  In 1989, I was working in London on a
story when suddenly I heard the news
that the Russians were planning to make Berlin
an open city. So I got on a plane. When I arrived
in Berlin many people, young and old, were
attacking the wall with stones. The woman in
the photo was shouting, ‘I hate it, I hate it’.

3  When I took this photo we were in a hotel
room in Paris in 1964. John and Paul were
at the piano and at first nothing much was
happening, but suddenly they became
completely focused. First the melody came,
and then the words. ‘Baby’s good to me you
know, she’s happy as can be you know…’. They
were composing their song I feel fine.

c  Read the texts again. Cover them and try
to remember. What was happening when
he took the photos?

   When he took the photo in Berlin, people were
attacking the wall and a woman was shouting.

d  Look at the highlighted verbs in paragraph 1.
What tense are they? What’s the difference?

e  p.128 Grammar Bank 2B. Read the rules
and do the exercises.
2 READING & LISTENING

a Look at the photo. What can you see? Where are they? What are they doing?

b Read what the photographer says and check your answers to a. What happened to the photo? What happened 30 years later?

c Now listen to Marinette and Henri talking about their photo. Are they still in love?

d Listen again and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. They always knew that their photo was famous.
2. Marinette saw the book with their photo in a bookshop.
3. When the photographer took the photo they were laughing.
4. Marinette wanted Henri to stand near her.
5. They didn’t know that the photographer was taking their photo.
6. Henri was trying to kiss Marinette.
7. Henri thinks they were arguing about their wedding.
8. They got married a year after the photo.
9. Marinette and Henri work together every day.
10. She says that she and Henri are very similar.

3 VOCABULARY at, in, on

a Complete the sentences with at, in, or on.

1. President Nixon left the White House ______ August 9th 1974.
2. The Beatles were _______ a hotel room _______ Paris _______ 1964.
3. Willy Ronis took the photo _______ the balcony _______ March 1957.
4. The young couple went up to the balcony _______ 3.00 in the afternoon.
5. Henri and Marinette see each other every day, _______ home and _______ work.


4 PRONUNCIATION /ə/

/a/ is the most common sound in English.

a 2.5 Listen and repeat the sound word and sound.

b 2.6 Listen to these words and underline the stressed syllable.

about exhibition photographer together balcony October

c Listen again and repeat the words. Practise making the /ə/ sound.

d 2.7 Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm.

A Where ______ you ______ six o’clock in the evening?
   B I ______ at work.

A What ______ you ______ doing?
   B I ______ having a meeting with the boss.

e In pairs, take turns to answer the questions about yesterday.

Where ______ you ______? What were you ______ doing?

6.00 p.m. 6.30 a.m. 3.00 p.m. 11.00 a.m. lunchtime 10 p.m.

5 SPEAKING

a Communication Famous photos


b Talk to a partner. Ask more questions if you can.

Do you have a photo you really like? Who took it? What was happening at the time?
Do you have any photos in your bedroom or living room?
Do you like taking photos?
Who is good at taking photos in your family?
Do you like being in photos?
Fifty years of pop

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
a In pairs or groups, answer the questions.
1 What music / song / album do you like listening to...
when you’re happy when you’re in a car
when you’re sad when you’re studying
when you’re at a party when you’re in love
2 What’s your favourite decade for pop music?
(the 80s, 90s, etc.)
3 Who are your favourite bands / singers of all time?
4 Which was the last CD you bought?
b Complete the quiz questions with a question word.
How How many Where What How long
Which (x2) Why Who (x2) Whose When
c In pairs, answer the questions.

2 GRAMMAR questions with and without auxiliaries
a Cover the quiz and from memory complete the questions.
1 Which song ______ Robbie Williams ______ with Nicole Kidman?
2 Who ______ I can’t get you out of my head?
b Answer these questions.
1 How is question 1 different from question 2?
2 What is the subject of the verb in question 1?
3 What is the subject of the verb in question 2?
c p.128 Grammar Bank 2C Read the rules and do the exercises.

1. did Freddie Mercury, the lead singer of Queen, die?
2. did the Eagles sing in their 1976 song?
3. did the Beatles stay together?
4. husband is the film director Guy Ritchie?
5. happened to Mick Jagger in 2004?
6. song did Robbie Williams sing with Nicole Kidman in 2002?
7. sang I can’t get you out of my head?
8. did Nirvana stop playing in 1994?
9. band included Phil Collins and Peter Gabriel?
10. Spice Girls were there?
11. did Elvis Presley die?
12. did Chris Martin, lead singer of Coldplay, marry in 2003?
3 PRONUNCIATION /w/, /h/

a. Look at the two sound pictures. What are the words and sounds?

b. Write the words in the box in the right column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>what</th>
<th>when</th>
<th>where</th>
<th>which</th>
<th>why</th>
<th>how</th>
<th>who</th>
<th>whose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

[Sound pictures]

c. 2.8 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

d. p.159 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings for these sounds.

e. 2.9 Listen and write the questions. Say the questions. Copy the rhythm.

4 SPEAKING

Communication Music quiz A p.109 B p.113. First write the questions. Then ask them to your partner.

5 READING

a. Read the article once and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. Imagine was a hit three times.
2. Yoko Ono helped to write Imagine.
3. Ono wrote poems for John Lennon.
4. Lennon never said that Yoko helped him with the song.
5. Imagine was written in two places.
6. John Lennon opened the new Liverpool Airport.

b. Read the article again. Number the sentences in the order that things happened.

A John Lennon read Ono’s poems.
B John Lennon wrote Imagine.
C Yoko Ono helped her little brother.
D John Lennon spoke about the song in an interview.
E Liverpool Airport was renamed John Lennon Airport.
F Yoko Ono spoke about the song on a TV programme.
G The song became a hit again when Lennon died.
H The song became popular again after September 11th 2001.

6 2.10 SONG ≫ Imagine

Who wrote Imagine?

Imagine, John Lennon’s most famous song, was recently voted ‘Britain’s favourite song of all time’. It’s an idealistic song about peace and the hope for a better world. ‘Imagine all the people living life in peace.’ The song was a big hit in 1971, and again in 1980 when Lennon was murdered in New York. It became a hit for a third time after the terrorist attacks of September 11th 2001.

But who really wrote the song? Until recently the answer to this question was always John Lennon. But on a TV programme this week Lennon’s wife, Yoko Ono, spoke for the first time about how she, in fact, helped to write the song.

Ono said that the idea and inspiration for Imagine came from some of her poems that John Lennon was reading at that time. The poems began with the word ‘Imagine’: ‘Imagine a raindrop. Imagine a goldfish.’ Ono said, ‘When I was a child in Japan during the Second World War my brother and I were terribly hungry. I imagined delicious menus for him and he began to smile. If you think something is impossible, you can imagine it and make it happen.’

In an interview just before he died, Lennon admitted that Yoko deserved credit for Imagine. He said, ‘A lot of it — the lyrics and the concept — came from her, from her book of poems, imagine this, imagine that.’ Lennon said that he was ‘too macho’ to share the credit with her at the time.

Ono said that some of the song was written when they were flying across the Atlantic and the rest was written on the piano in their bedroom at their home in England. Ono said, ‘The song speaks about John’s dream for the world. It was something he really wanted to say.’ Imagine became a popular song for peace activists everywhere.

In March 2002 the airport in his home town of Liverpool was re-named John Lennon Airport. A sign above the main entrance has a line from Imagine: ‘Above us only sky’.
1 READING

A Next day Jamie phoned Hannah and invited her to dinner. He took her to a very romantic French restaurant and they talked all evening. After that Jamie and Hannah saw each other every day. Every evening when Hannah finished work they met at 5.30 in a coffee bar in the High Street. They were madly in love.

B Suddenly, a man ran across the road. He was wearing a dark coat so Hannah didn’t see him until it was too late. Although she tried to stop, she hit the man. Hannah panicked. She didn’t stop and she drove to the coffee bar as fast as she could. But when she arrived Jamie wasn’t there. She phoned him, but his mobile was turned off, so she waited for ten minutes and then went home.

C Hannah met Jamie in the summer of 2004. It was Hannah’s 21st birthday and she and her friends went to a club. They wanted to dance, but they didn’t like the music so Hannah went to speak to the DJ. ‘This music is awful,’ she said. ‘Could you play something else?’ The DJ looked at her and said, ‘Don’t worry, I have the perfect song for you.’

D Two hours later a police car arrived at Hannah’s house. A policewoman knocked at the door. ‘Good evening, Madam,’ she said. ‘Are you Hannah Davis? I’d like to speak to you. Can I come in?’

E One evening in October, Hannah was at work. As usual she was going to meet Jamie at 5.30. It was dark and it was raining. She looked at her watch. It was 5.20. She was going to be late! She ran to her car and got in. At 5.25 she was driving along the High Street. She was going very fast because she was in a hurry.

F Two minutes later he said: ‘The next song is by Coldplay. It’s called Yellow and it’s for a beautiful girl who’s dancing over there.’ Hannah knew that the song was for her because she was wearing a yellow dress. When Hannah and her friends left the club, the DJ was waiting at the door. ‘Hi, I’m Jamie,’ he said to Hannah. ‘Can I see you again?’ So Hannah gave him her phone number.

2 GRAMMAR so, because, but, although

a Complete these sentences from the story with so, because, but, or although.
1 She was going very fast _______ she was in a hurry.
2 _______ she tried to stop, she hit the man.
3 They wanted to dance, _______ they didn’t like the music.
4 He was wearing a dark coat _______ Hannah didn’t see him.

b p.128 Grammar Bank 2D Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a. Make verb phrases with a verb from circle 1 and a phrase from circle 2. 
   - meet in a coffee bar
b. Cover circle 1. Try to remember the verb for each phrase.

4 PRONUNCIATION the letter a

Hannah met Jamie in the summer of 2004.

⚠️ The letter a has different pronunciations.

a. 2.12 Listen and repeat the sound words in the chart.

b. 2.13 Put these words in the right columns. Listen and check.
   - again all although arrive dark
   - fast play ran romantic wait

5 SPEAKING

a. Read the story of Hannah and Jamie in 1 again.
b. In pairs, use the pictures 1–6 to re-tell the story.

6 LISTENING

⚠️ Remember! When people speak fast, they link words together.

a. 2.14 That evening a policewoman went to Hannah’s house. Listen to six extracts from their conversation. What are the missing words?
   1. A policewoman ________ the door.
   2. Can ________ ________?
   3. Well, I’m afraid I have ________ news for you.
   4. It was a ________ ________ car.
   5. Every police officer in the town ________ ________ her.
   6. Did you know your ________ ________ is broken?

b. 2.15 Now listen to all the conversation. When the teacher pauses the recording, answer the questions.
   1. What do you think the policewoman is going to say?
   2. What do you think the bad news is?
   3. Do you think Jamie is OK?
   4. Who do you think was driving the car?
   5. Why do you think the policewoman wants to see her car?

c. Now close your books and listen again. Can you follow the story?
CHECKING IN

2.16 Listen to Allie checking in. Answer the questions.
1. Does the receptionist call Allie 'Ms Gray' or 'Mrs Gray'? 
2. How many nights is Allie staying? 
3. What's her room number? 
4. What time's breakfast? 
5. Which floor is the Pavilion Restaurant on?

US English: elevator
UK English: lift

CALLING RECEPTION

a 2.17 Cover the dialogues and listen. Who does Allie phone? Why?

YOU HEAR
Hello, reception.
How can I help you?

YOU SAY
Hello. This is room 419.
I have a problem with the air-conditioning. It isn't working, and it's very hot in my room.

I'm sorry, ma'am. I'll ______ someone up to look at it right now.
Which ______ service. Can I help you?
Whole wheat or ______ bread? ______ or without mayo?
With ______ or salad? ______ to drink?

Thank you.
Hello. This is room 419.
Can I have a tuna sandwich, please?
Whole wheat, please.

Without.
Salad, please.
Yes, a Diet Coke.
Just ice.

Thank you.

b 2.18 Listen again. Complete the YOU HEAR phrases.

c 2.19 Listen and repeat the YOU SAY phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d In pairs, roleplay the dialogues. A (book open) you're the receptionist / room service, B (book closed) you're Allie. Swap roles.

SOCIAL ENGLISH  coffee before the conference

a 2.19 Listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1. Mark is going to take Allie to dinner tonight.
2. The cocktail party is on Thursday.
3. Allie wants to see the bay and the Golden Gate Bridge.
4. Brad is from the San Francisco office.
5. Brad offers to take Allie sightseeing.

b Complete the USEFUL PHRASES. Listen again and check.

c 2.18 Listen and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

USEFUL PHRASES

A  W____ done!
M  Did you s____ well?
A  How are t____?
M  They're fine.
A  What are the p_____ for the week?
M  Allie, t_____ is Brad Martin.
M  It's t_____ to go.
Every week we ask readers to send in a favourite photo, together with a short description of why the photo is important to them. This week's winner is Dominic, a graphic designer from London.

1. One of my favourite photos is of a man cooking fish.

2. I took the photo in the summer of 1994 when I was on holiday in Africa.

3. We were in Zanzibar, and we were sailing round the islands. We caught some fish, and then landed on one of the islands, and our guide made a fire and cooked the fish.

4. Richie, the guide, was a wonderful person—he became a good friend. He was also a fantastic cook. I can’t remember exactly what fish he was cooking in the photo, but it tasted delicious!

5. I keep this photo on the wall in my studio. On a grey, rainy day in London, I just have to look at it and then memories of a wonderful adventure come back, and I can imagine that I’m in sunny Africa again.

a. Match the questions with paragraphs 1–5.
   What was happening when you took the photo?  
   Where do you keep it? Why do you like it?  
   What’s your favourite photo?  
   Who took it? When? Where?  
   Tell me more about who or what is in the photo.

b. Complete the text with at, in, or on.

   You can keep a photo...
   - in an album.
   - in your wallet.
   - on your bedroom.
   - on the wall.
   - on a table.
   - by your bed.

WRITE about your favourite photo. Answer the questions in a in the right order.
CHECK your description for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling). Attach a copy of the photo if you can.
GRAMMAR

Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What's _____ name?
  a yours  b your  c you

1 Where _____ on holiday last year?
  a you went
  b did you go
  c you did go

2 He didn’t _____ to come to France with us.
  a wanted
  b wants
  c want

3 We _____ to San Francisco last August.
  a flown
  b fly
  c flew

4 When I took the photo you _____ looking at me.
  a weren’t
  b wasn’t
  c didn’t

5 What _____ doing when you phoned him?
  a he was
  b was he
  c were he

6 Who _____ that song?
  a did write
  b wrote
  c did wrote

7 When _____?
  a he died
  b died he
  c did he die

8 She was driving fast _____ she was late.
  a although
  b because
  c so

9 _____ the music was bad, we danced all night.
  a But
  b Although
  c So

10 It was dark _____ she didn’t see him.
  a but
  b so
  c because

VOCABULARY

a holiday verbs

Complete the phrases with a verb.

___ go ___ shopping
1 _____ photos
2 _____ for a walk
3 _____ in a hotel
4 _____ two days in Paris / 1,000 euros
5 _____ a good time

b prepositions

Complete the sentences with at, in, or on.

I’m sitting ___ a taxi.
1 We met ___ a party.
2 The two lovers were talking ___ a balcony.
3 We were sitting ___ the garden.
4 There was a photo ___ the wall.
5 I was waiting ___ the bus stop.

C question words

Complete the questions with a question word.

What is Sting’s real name?
1 _____ did The Police make their first record?
2 _____ wrote their songs?
3 _____ records did they sell?
4 _____ happened to them in the end?
5 _____ of their albums do you like best?

PRONUNCIATION

a Underline the word with a different sound

b Underline the stressed syllable.

information

incredible horrible photographer suddenly although
What can you do?

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

Mountain climbers rescued by text message

Two British climbers were rescued yesterday after sending an SOS text message to a friend in London.

Rachel Kelsey, 34, and her partner, Jeremy Colenso, 33, who are both experienced climbers, were on a climbing holiday last week in Switzerland. But on Saturday night, when they were 3,000 metres up in the mountains, there was a terrible storm. The wind was incredibly strong and the snow was two metres deep. They couldn’t move and they had to spend the night on the mountain. Rachel had her mobile phone with her, so she sent a text message to five friends in the UK asking for help.

About four hours later, one of her friends, Avery Cunliffe in London, replied with a text message. Avery said, ‘I don’t usually have my mobile in the bedroom. At about 4 a.m. I woke up and saw Rachel’s message. I found the number of the police in Switzerland and phoned them. They contacted the mountain rescue team.’

But the weather was so bad that the helicopter couldn’t get to the two climbers. The rescue team sent a text message to Rachel and Jeremy telling them that they had to spend a second night on the mountain. The message said: ‘So sorry Rachel. We tried. Wind too strong. Have to wait till morning. Take care. Be strong.’ Rachel said, ‘I thought we were going to die. It was freezing, -15°C, and really windy on the mountain. We spent the night talking and planning a holiday in the sun!’

Next morning the storm passed and the helicopter arrived to take them off the mountain. Avery said, ‘When I heard that Rachel and Jeremy were safe I was dancing around my flat.’ Rachel said that she and Jeremy were now looking forward to a hot bath and a good meal. But first they were going to buy the rescue team a bottle of whisky.

a Read the article and mark the sentences T (true), F (false), or DS (doesn’t say).
1 Rachel and Jeremy were climbing for the first time.
2 They couldn’t go down the mountain because of bad weather.
3 Avery was sleeping when Rachel’s message came.
4 He called the mountain rescue team in Switzerland.
5 Rachel’s other four friends didn’t reply.
6 The helicopter couldn’t rescue them immediately.
7 Rachel and Jeremy spent three nights on the mountain.
8 They wanted to buy Avery a bottle of whisky.

b Underline and learn six new words or expressions from the article. Use your dictionary to check the meaning and pronunciation.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

a 221 Listen and circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.
1 Where did the woman go on holiday this year?
   a Portugal b Scotland c Spain
2 What was the weather like in Italy?
   a It rained b It was hot c It was sunny
3 Where did the photographer take the photo of the actor?
   a On the stairs b In reception c In the street
4 What was the model doing when he took the photo?
   a Talking b Reading c Walking on the ‘catwalk’
5 What year did the pop group make their last album?
   a 2001 b 2002 c 2003

b 222 Listen to the story and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 She was driving to work.
2 It was raining.
3 She saw a man in the road asking her to stop.
4 The two men drove away in her car.
5 She rang the police on her mobile.

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a Can you...? Yes (√)

☐ talk about your last holiday
☐ talk about your favourite photo
☐ talk about your favourite singer or band

b Complete the questions with was, were, do, did, or —
1 What kind of books ______ you read?
2 Where ______ you at 9.00 this morning?
3 What ______ happening when you got home last night?
4 What ______ you doing on September 11th 2001?
5 How many people ______ came to class today?

c Ask your partner the questions in b. Ask for more information.
1 READING
a. When was the last time you went to an airport (or station)? Were you meeting someone or going somewhere?

b. Read the magazine article. Complete it with these questions.

- Do you know anybody here?
- Are you going to stay for long?
- Is this your first visit?
- What are you planning to do?
- When are you leaving?
- Does he know you’re coming?
- How are you going to get there?
- How long are you going to stay?
- Where are you staying in London?

1. Rima, 23, from Vilnius in Lithuania

Why are you here?

I’m going to look for a job. Maybe as an au pair, looking after children. And I want to improve my English too, so I can get a better job when I go back home. I hope I can find some work quickly, because I don’t have much money.

1. Is this your first visit?
Yes, it is. I’m really looking forward to living here, but I’m a bit nervous too.

2. Six months or a year. It depends how things go.

3. Yes, I have a friend who’s working here in a restaurant. I’m going to stay with her for a few weeks until I can find my own flat.
Well, good luck!

2 GRAMMAR going to, present continuous

a. In pairs, cover the text. Can you remember three of Rima’s plans? Can you remember three of Jonathan’s plans?

Rima’s going to work.

b. Look at the interview with Maki and Koji. Highlight six present continuous sentences. Do they refer to the present or the future?

c. p.130 Grammar Bank 3A. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 LISTENING

a  3.1 Listen to Rima talking six months later. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 She's working in an Italian restaurant.
2 It was easy to find a job.
3 She isn't living with her friend now.
4 She isn't going to English classes.
5 She doesn't know if she's going to go back to Lithuania.
6 She's leaving the restaurant next month.
7 Her boyfriend is a waiter.
8 Her family are very happy that she's getting married.

b Listen again for more details. Correct the false sentences.

4 VOCABULARY  look

a Look at Rima's interview on p.28 again. Find and underline three expressions with look. Match them to their dictionary definitions.
1 _______ try to find something
2 _______ wait with pleasure for something which is going to happen
3 _______ be responsible for or take care of somebody or something

b Complete the sentences with after, for, or forward to.
1 A nurse is a person who looks _______ people who are ill.
2 She's going to New York next month. She's really looking _______ it.
3 I can't find my keys. Can you help me to look _______ them?
4 I'm not looking _______ the exam - it's going to be very difficult.
5 Our house is a bit too small. We're looking _______ a new one.
6 Could you look _______ our dog this weekend? We want to go away.

c Tell your partner...
• something you are looking forward to
• something you often have to look for in the morning
• somebody or something that you (occasionally) look after

5 PRONUNCIATION  sentence stress

a Underline the words which are important for communication in these questions (the stressed words).
1 Where are you going? 4 Where are you staying?
2 When are you leaving? 5 When are you coming back?
3 How are you getting there?

b  3.2 Listen and check. Listen again and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

6 SPEAKING

a Write down three plans or arrangements that you have for this week. Work in pairs. A tell B your plans. B listen and ask for more information. Then swap roles.

b 😊 Communication Where are you going on holiday? p.116.
Find a travelling companion for an exotic holiday.
1 **GRAMMAR** *will / won’t* for predictions

a. Look at the picture. Who’s the optimist? Who’s the pessimist? Which are you?

b. Read the **YOU** phrases. Find the **THE PESSIMIST**’S responses in the box below and write them in the phrase book.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>YOU</strong></th>
<th><strong>THE PESSIMIST</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We’re having the party in the garden.</td>
<td>It’ll rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m doing my driving test this afternoon.</td>
<td>You won’t pass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’re meeting Ana and Daniel at 7.00.</td>
<td>You won’t understand a word.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m having my first skiing lesson today.</td>
<td>They’ll be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My brother has a new girlfriend.</td>
<td>It won’t last.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lent James some money yesterday.</td>
<td>It’ll rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to see a film tonight in English.</td>
<td>You’ll break your leg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’re going to drive to the city centre.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My team are playing in the cup tonight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m catching the 7.30 train.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

He won’t pay you back. You’ll miss it.
You won’t pass. They’ll be late.
They’ll lose. It’ll rain.
You won’t find a parking space. You won’t understand a word.

**c.** Listen and check. Repeat the responses.

**d.** Practise in pairs.
A (book open) read the **YOU** phrases.
B (book closed) say the **THE PESSIMIST** phrase.
Then swap roles.

**e.** Look at the **THE PESSIMIST** phrases and answer the questions.
1. Do the sentences refer to the present or the future?
2. What are the full words in the contractions *’ll* and *won’t*?

**f.** **p.130 Grammar Bank 3B.** Read the rules and do the exercises.

2 **VOCABULARY** opposite verbs

a. What’s the opposite of the verbs in A? Use a verb from B.

b. **p.149 Vocabulary Bank Verbs.** Do part 1.
3 PRONUNCIATION contractions, /'ll/ and /'d/ and /'w/.

a. Listen and repeat the contractions. Copy the rhythm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I'll</th>
<th>I'll be late</th>
<th>I'll be late for work.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You'll</td>
<td>You'll break</td>
<td>You'll break your leg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She'll</td>
<td>She'll miss</td>
<td>She'll miss the train.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It'll</td>
<td>It'll rain</td>
<td>It'll rain tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They'll</td>
<td>They'll lose</td>
<td>They'll lose the match.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Listen. Can you hear the difference?

| want | I want to pass. | won't | I won't pass. |

3.6 Listen and write down the six sentences.

4 LISTENING

a. Listen to the introduction to a radio programme. Why is positive thinking good for you?

b. Try to guess the missing words in these tips.

| Caller 1 | Live in the ______, not in the ______. |
| Caller 2 | Think ______ thoughts, not negative ones. |
| Caller 3 | Don't spend a lot of time reading the ______ or watching the ______ on TV. |
| Caller 4 | Every week make a list of all the ______ ______ that happened to you. |
| Caller 5 | Try to use ______ ______ when you speak to other people. |

c. Listen and check.

d. Listen again. Write down any extra information you hear.

e. Which tips do you think are useful?

5 SPEAKING

a. In pairs match the positive phrases with the situations. Make a positive prediction, I'm sure you'll..., I'm sure it'll..., etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Your friend says...</th>
<th>You say...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I have an important exam tomorrow.</td>
<td>Good luck! I'm sure you'll pass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I'm getting married next month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I'm a bit depressed today.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I'm going to New York next month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I can't go out tonight. I don't have any money.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Ask and answer with a partner. Use a phrase from the box and say why.

Are you a positive thinker?

Do you think...

• you'll go somewhere exciting for your next holiday?
• you'll pass your next exam?
• you'll get a good (or better) job?
• you'll do something nice this weekend?
• you'll get an interesting e-mail from someone tonight?
• you'll get to the end of this book?

I hope so. (I hope not.)
I think so.
I don't think so.
Maybe. / Perhaps.
Probably.
Definitely.
1 READING
a Look at the six promises below. What do you think they have in common?
I won't tell anyone. I'll write.
I'll always love you. I'll pay you back tomorrow.
I'll come back tomorrow. This won't hurt.
b Read the article once and write the correct promise in the gaps 1–6.
c Read the text again. Find words to match to the definitions. Underline the stressed syllable.
1 ________ (n) a person who repairs water pipes, baths, etc.
2 ________ (n) studies to find more information about something
3 ________ (n) putting medicine under the skin with a needle
4 ________ (n) the act of travelling from one place to another
5 ________ (adv) one or the other
6 ________ (adj) something which lasts forever

2 PRONUNCIATION  word stress: two-syllable words
Most two-syllable words are stressed on the first syllable, e.g. father. When words are stressed on the second syllable, e.g. although, underline the stress and learn them.
a Look at these two-syllable words from the text. Which five are stressed on the second syllable?
secret forget exist
always complete dentist
borrow e-mail money
promise address doctor
builder journey worry
b 3.9 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

Promises, promises
We make them and we break them, because some promises are very hard to keep. Here are the top six most common broken promises ...

1
You always hear this from builders, plumbers, and electricians. But the truth is very different. They won't come back until next week (or later). And you will probably need to phone them five times first.

2
We love hearing secrets and we happily make this promise. And at the time we really mean it. 'Don't worry,' we say, 'your secret is safe with me.' But of course it isn't. Research shows that everybody will always tell one other person the secret. Very soon the whole street will know!

3
A favourite phrase of doctors, dentists, and nurses. They usually say it just before they give you an injection. But the phrase is not complete. The full phrase is: 'This won't hurt me (but it will probably hurt you a lot).'

4
You make a new friend on holiday or on a bus journey, you swap e-mail addresses, and you make this promise. Six months later you find a name and e-mail address on a card or an old piece of paper. 'Oh dear!' you think – but then you remember that they didn't write to you either!

5
In Hamlet, Shakespeare told us never to borrow or lend money. He was right. When we lend people money they always make this promise, but then they forget. If we then ask for the money back, they think we are mean. If we don't ask, we never get the money back.

6
Whitney Houston sang a song about this and every day, all over the world thousands of people make the same promise to each other. We know eternal love exists, but is this promise the most difficult one to keep of them all?
3 GRAMMAR will / won’t for promises, offers, and decisions

a Look at the cartoons. What do you think the people are saying?

A B C D

E

Meat or fish?

F

b Complete sentences 1–6 with a verb from the box and match them with the cartoons (A–F).

have help love open pay take

1 I’ll ___ the steak, please.
2 I’ll ___ you back tomorrow.
3 I’ll ___ you!
4 I’ll always ___ you.
5 Shall I ___ the window?
6 Yes, it’s very nice. I’ll ___ it.

c Look at the sentences again. In which two are people…?

making a promise ___ and ___

making a decision ___ and ___

offering to do something ___ and ___

d p.130 Grammar Bank 3C. Read the rules and do the exercises.

4 VOCABULARY verb + back

a Look at the sentences. What’s the difference between go and go back?

I’m going to Italy. I’m going back to Italy.

b Complete the dialogues with a phrase from the box.

call back come back give it back pay me back take it back

1 A I love that shirt you gave me for my birthday. But it’s a bit small.
B Don’t worry. I’ll ___ to the shop and change it.

2 A Can I speak to Bart, please?
B I’m sorry. He’s not here at the moment.
A OK. I’ll ___ later.

3 A Excuse me. Could I talk to you for a moment?
B I’m really busy at the moment. Could you ___ in five minutes?

4 A That’s my pen you’re using!
B No, it’s not. It’s mine.
A No, it’s mine. ___!

5 A Can you lend me 50 euros, Nick?
B It depends. When can you ___?
A Tomorrow. I’ll go to the bank first thing in the morning.

c 3.10 Listen and check. In pairs, practise the dialogues.

5 SPEAKING

Communication I’ll / Shall I? game p.117. Play the game.

6 3.11 SONG White Flag
I was only dreaming

1 READING & LISTENING

a) In pairs, say if you think these statements are true or false.
1 We can only remember a dream if we wake up in the middle of it.
2 We always appear in our dreams.
3 People often have the same dream many times.
4 Psychoanalysts use dreams to help their patients.
5 Dreams can predict the future.

b) You’re going to listen to a psychoanalyst talking to a patient about his dreams. Cover the dialogue and listen and number the pictures 1–6 in the correct order.

Dr Muller: So, tell me, what did you dream about?
Patient: I was at a party. There were a lot of people.
Dr Muller: What did they do?
Patient: They were singing, and dancing.
Dr Muller: Were you drinking?
Patient: Yes, I had a glass of champagne.
Dr Muller: And then what?
Patient: Then, suddenly I was in a garden. There were a lot of flowers...
Dr Muller: Flowers, yes... what kind of flowers?
Patient: I could really see—it was dark. And I could hear music—somebody was playing the violin.
Dr Muller: The violin? Go on.
Patient: And then I saw an owl, a big owl in a tree...
Dr Muller: How did you feel? Were you frightened?
Patient: No, not frightened really, no, but I felt very cold. Especially my feet—they were freezing. And then I...
Dr Muller: Your feet? Mmm, very interesting, very interesting indeed...
Patient: So what did it mean, doctor?

c) Now uncover the dialogue. Listen again and fill the gaps with a word or phrase.
You dream ... | This means ...  
---|---
that you are at a party. | 1. the person you love doesn’t love you.
that you are drinking champagne. | 2. you are going to be very busy.
about flowers. | 3. you’ll be successful.
that somebody is playing the violin. | 4. you’re feeling positive about the future.
about an owl. | 5. you want some romance in your life. You are looking for a new partner.
that you have cold feet. | 6. you need to ask an older person for help.

Understanding your dreams

3. PRONUNCIATION sentence stress
   a. 3.14 Listen to sentences 1–6 and underline the stressed (information) words.
   1. You’ll have a meeting with your boss.
   2. Somebody was playing the violin.
   3. You’re going to meet a lot of people.
   4. How did you feel?
   5. I’m meeting her tonight.
   6. She doesn’t love me.

b. Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

2. GRAMMAR review of tenses
   a. Look at the chart. Write the sentences below the chart in the correct place in the Example column.

   **Tense** | **Example** | **Use**
   --- | --- | ---
   present simple | You work in an office | D
   present continuous | | |
   past simple | | |
   past continuous | | |
   going to + infinitive | | |
   will / won’t + infinitive | | |

I was drinking champagne.
You’ll have a meeting with your boss.
I saw an owl.
You’re going to meet a lot of people.
You work in an office.
I’m meeting her tonight.

b. Now complete the Use column with uses A–F.
   A. Future plans and predictions.
   B. Finished actions in the past.
   C. Things happening now, or plans for a fixed time/place.
   D. Things that happen always or usually.
   E. Future predictions, decisions, offers, and promises.
   F. Actions that were in progress at a past time.

   c. p.130 Grammar Bank 3D. Read the rules and do the exercises.

4. SPEAKING

5. VOCABULARY verbs + prepositions
   Complete the questions with a preposition from the box.
   about (x3) for of to (x3) with (x2)

   1. What did you dream _______ last night?
   2. What radio station do you usually _______?
   3. What do you _______ with your friends?
   4. Did you _______ a bus or a train today?
   5. Who do you usually _______ in your family?
   6. Are you going to _______ anybody tonight?
   7. What do you _______ this book?
   8. What are you _______ now?
   9. Do you often _______ people?
   10. Who was the first person you _______ this morning?
Restaurant problems

ORDERING A MEAL

3.15 Listen to Allie and Mark at the restaurant. Answer the questions.

1. What do they order for starters?
2. What does Allie order for her main course?
3. What kind of potatoes do they order?
4. How does Mark want his steak – rare, medium, or well done?
5. What are they going to drink?

Menu

Starters
- Tomato and mozzarella salad
- Mushroom soup
- Grilled prawns

Main courses
- Fried chicken
- T-bone steak
- Grilled salmon

All main courses served with a baked potato or fries.

PROBLEMS WITH A MEAL

a 3.16 Cover the dialogue and listen. What three problems do they have?

YOU HEAR

Chicken for you ma’am, and the steak for you, sir.
No problem ____________________
I’m very sorry.
____ back to the kitchen.
Yes, sir.
Yes, you’re right. I’m very sorry.
It’s not my day today! ______ a new check.

YOU SAY

I’m sorry, but I asked for a baked potato, not fries.
Excuse me.
I asked for my steak rare and this is well done.
Could we have the check, please?
Thanks. Excuse me. I think there’s a mistake in the check. We only had two glasses of wine, not a bottle.
Thank you.

b  Listen again. Complete the YOU HEAR phrases.

c 3.17 Listen and repeat the YOU SAY phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d  In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. A (book open) you’re the waiter, B (book closed) you’re Mark and Allie. Swap roles.

SOCIAL ENGLISH after dinner

a 3.18 Listen to Mark and Allie. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. Jennifer is Mark’s ex-wife.
2. Mark was married for three years.
3. His wife left him for another man.
4. Allie met her previous boyfriend at work.
5. After dinner they’re going to go dancing.

b  Complete the USEFUL PHRASES.

Listen again and check.

USEFUL PHRASES

A That was a l_____ dinner.
M I’m g_____ you enjoyed it.
A Can I ask you s_____?
M Shall we go for a w_____?
A Where s_____ we go?
M We could have a_____ cup of coffee.

Study Link MultiROM
An informal letter

1. 28 Randalls Road
2. 
3. 
4. 

Thank you for your letter. We’re very happy that you’re coming to stay with us in August, and we’re sure you’ll have a good time.

What time are you arriving at Gatwick airport? You can get a train to Brighton from there. Do you have a mobile phone? Then you can phone us when you’re on the train, and we’ll meet you at the station.

Could you also tell me a few more things about yourself? Is there anything you can’t eat or drink? Do you smoke? Do you want a single room, or do you prefer to share a room with another student? Are you going to go back to Russia immediately after the end of the course? If not, how many more days are you going to stay with us?

5. 

6. 

Jane Sanders

7. I’m sending you a photo of the family, so you’ll recognize us at the station!

---

Imagine you are going to stay with Mrs Sanders. Answer her letter using your own information. Remember to include your address and the date.

**WRITE** three paragraphs:

Paragraph 1  Thank her for her letter.
Paragraph 2  Say when you are arriving, etc.
Paragraph 3  Answer her other questions.

End the letter with *Best wishes* and your name.

**CHECK** your letter for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).

---

a Ivan is a Russian student who’s going to study English in Brighton. He’s going to stay with a family. Read the letter from Mrs Sanders and complete it with expressions from the box.

**Brighton BN3 1HJ**  **Best wishes**  **28 Randalls Road**  **14th April 2005**

Dear Ivan  PS  Looking forward to hearing from you

b Read the letter again and answer the questions.

1. When’s Ivan coming to Britain?
2. How is he going to get there?
3. How many questions does Mrs Sanders ask him?
4. Does *Looking forward to hearing from you* mean…?
   a I hope you will write soon.
   b I’m going to write again soon.
5. Why does Mrs Sanders send Ivan a photo?

c What differences are there between an informal letter and an e-mail?
3

What do you remember?

**GRAMMAR**
Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What’s ______ name?
- a) yours  b) your  c) you

1. We ______ live with John’s parents.
- a) ’re going  b) ’re going to  c) go to

2. What time ______?
- a) you are leaving  b) are you leaving  c) are you leave

3. I’m sure ______ lose the match.
- a) they  b) they’ll  c) they going to

4. It’s very late. They probably ______ come now.
- a) won’t to  b) won’t  c) don’t

5. I ______ pass the exam.
- a) don’t think she’ll  b) think she won’t  c) don’t think she won’t

6. It’s very hot in here. ______ I open the window?
- a) Will  b) Shall  c) Won’t

7. A) I don’t have a car.
   B) Don’t worry. ______ take you.
- a) We  b) We are  c) We’ll

8. I ______ about my grandmother.
- a) dream often  b) often am dreaming  c) often dream

9. I ______ in the park when I saw an enormous dog.
- a) walked  b) was walking  c) ’m walking

10. Where ______ go next summer?
- a) are you going to  b) you will  c) are you

**VOCABULARY**

a) prepositions

Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.
Where do you come ______ from?

1. Last night I dreamed ______ being alone on a desert island.
2. I’m looking ______ my grandchildren next week while my daughter is on holiday.
3. I’m looking ______ to the weekend.
4. I waited ______ the bus for half an hour.
5. I often argue ______ my dad about politics.

b) verbs + back

Match the phrases.

‘I’m going tomorrow.’

1. ‘Could you lend me 50 euros?’
   - A) ‘Yes, I’ll give it back tomorrow.’
   - B) ‘No, go away and don’t come back.’
   - C) ‘OK, I’ll call back later.’
   - D) ‘If you can pay me back before Friday.’
   - E) ‘Take it back to the shop.’

   1) ‘Could you lend me 50 euros?’
   2) ‘I’m sorry, she’s not at home.’
   3) ‘Do you have my book?’
   4) ‘My new mobile doesn’t work.’
   5) ‘Don’t you want to see me again?’

   c) opposite verbs

Write the opposite verb phrase.

push the door ______

1) lose a match
2) remember to pay
3) buy a car
4) learn Spanish
5) get a letter

**PRONUNCIATION**

a) Underline the word with a different sound

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>home</th>
<th>one</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>too</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>won’t</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>sorry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>don’t</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>borrow</td>
<td>awful</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>remember</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) Underline the stressed syllable.

information ______

pessimist prediction remember important interesting
What can you do?

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

2020 woman the hunter, man the househusband

A new report on life in 2020 was published yesterday. This report predicts big changes, not just in technology but also changes in the way we live. These are some of the predictions for work and family life.

Family life
- One in five fathers will be househusbands, while the mothers go out to work.
- People will live near other people who have the same interests as them, for example in golf villages.
- There will often be three generations living in the same house, e.g. grandparents, parents, and children.
- People will live until their mid-eighties, but women will still live slightly longer than men.

Work and study
- One in five school classes will be on-line via the Internet. Pupils will also often have video classes with a ‘superteacher’ from another city or country.
- Most workers will only have short-term contracts. They will have to learn to do lots of different jobs because they will change jobs frequently.
- Most people will work a twenty-five hour week. This will usually mean working five hours a day, although some people may work three eight-hour days and have four days off.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

3.20 Listen to five short conversations.
Circle a, b, or c.
1. On Saturday the woman is going to ________.
   a. stay at home  b. go swimming  c. play volleyball
2. Who do they think will win the League?
   a. Arsenal  b. Manchester United  c. Liverpool
3. Next weekend the weather is going to be ________.
   a. wet and cold  b. sunny but cold  c. warm and sunny
4. The woman is going to buy ________.
   a. the red sweater  b. the blue sweater  c. the black sweater
5. Last night the student ________.
   a. had a bad dream  b. had a good dream  c. didn’t dream

3.21 Listen and complete the flight details.

Supertravel
Flight from London to ________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Departure</th>
<th>Tuesday May 6th</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight times</td>
<td>Outward: leaves 08.30, arrives ________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Return: leaves ________, arrives 12.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s name</td>
<td>Robert ________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a. In English, can you...? Yes (√)
   - talk about your plans for tonight
   - talk about your plans for next year
   - make three future predictions about your town
   - make three promises about your English

b. Re-order the words to make questions.
   1. doing weekend this what you are ?
   2. English year you next going study to are ?
   3. think do who will elections next you win the ?
   4. rain think tomorrow will you do it ?
   5. you dreams how your remember do often ?

c. Ask your partner the questions in b. Ask for more information.
From rags to riches

Have you ever been to a Zara store?

You probably have because it's one of the fastest-growing chains in the world. The person behind Zara is Amancio Ortega. He is the richest man in Spain, but very few people know his face. There are only two official photographs of him, and he rarely gives interviews. Although he is a multimillionaire businessman, he doesn't look like one -- he doesn't like wearing suits or ties, and prefers to wear jeans and a shirt.

When he was young he worked as a shop assistant in a clothes store, but he always dreamed of having his own business. In 1963 he started a small company which made women's pyjamas. In 1975, at the age of 40, he opened his first clothes shop in La Coruna, a small city in north-west Spain, and named it Zara. Now you can find Zara shops all over the world, from New York to Moscow to Singapore. So why is Zara so successful?

The main reason is that Zara reacts incredibly quickly to the latest designer fashions, and produces clothes which are fashionable but inexpensive. Zara can make a new line of clothes in three weeks. Other companies normally take about nine months. The clothes also change from week to week -- so customers keep coming back to see what's new. It produces 20,000 new designs a year -- and none of them stay in the shops for more than a month.

So if you've seen a new jacket or skirt you like in a Zara store, hurry up and buy it, because it won't be there for long.

1 READING & VOCABULARY
a What's the most popular place to buy clothes in your town? Do you buy your clothes there? If not, where?
b Read the text about Zara. Then cover it and answer the questions below from memory.
1 Who is Amancio Ortega?
2 What is unusual about him?
3 What was his first job?
4 When did he open the first Zara shop?
5 Where are there Zara shops now?
6 What are the secrets of Zara's success?
c Read the text again and underline any words that are connected with clothes.
d p.150 Vocabulary Bank Clothes.

2 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds
a 4.1 Put two clothes words in each column. Listen and check. Practise saying the words.
belt blouse clothes coat pyjamas scarf shirt shoes skirt suit sweater trousers
b Ask and answer with a partner.

What did you wear yesterday?
What are you going to wear tonight?
What were the last clothes you bought?
What's the first thing you take off when you get home?
Do you always try on clothes before you buy them?
How often do you wear a suit?
3 LISTENING
4.2 Listen to three people being interviewed about Zara. Complete the chart with their information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Woman 1</th>
<th>Woman 2</th>
<th>Man</th>
<th>Your partner</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Have you ever been to a Zara store?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 When did you last go there?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Where?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 What did you buy?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Are you happy with it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 GRAMMAR present perfect or past simple?
a Interview your partner about Zara (or another shop in your town) and write his / her answers in the chart.
b Look at questions 1 and 2 above.
   What tense are they?
   Which question refers to a specific time in the past?
   Which question is about some time in your life?
c ☞ p.132 Grammar Bank 4A. Read the rules and do the exercises.

5 SPEAKING
a Complete the questions with the past participle of the verb.

1 Have you ever _______ (wear) something only once? What? When / wear it?
2 Have you ever _______ (be) to a fashion show? Where? / enjoy it?
3 Have you ever _______ (dance) in very uncomfortable shoes? Where? What / happen?
4 Have you ever _______ (wear) ‘fancy dress’? When? What / wear?
5 Have you ever _______ (meet) someone who was wearing exactly the same as you? When? How / you feel?
6 Have you ever _______ (buy) something and never worn it? What? Why / not wear it?
7 Have you ever _______ (ruin) clothes in the washing machine? What? What / happen?
8 Have you ever _______ (have) an argument with your family about clothes? What about?

b Interview a partner with the questions. If he / she answers ‘Yes, I have’, make follow-up questions in the past simple.

Have you ever worn something only once? Yes I have. A suit.
When did you wear it? For an interview for a job.

6 4.3 SONG ♪ True Blue
Family conflicts

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases
a) Read the magazine article and complete it with these verbs.

changes cleaned does (x2) leaves
makes take tidies

b) Cover the text. Can you remember the eight bad habits?
c) In pairs, say which of these things are a problem in your house and why. What else is a problem?

housework food
the TV / computer the bathroom
pets (e.g. a dog) homework

2 GRAMMAR present perfect + just, yet, already
a) 4.4 Listen and number the pictures 1-4.
b) Listen again and complete the dialogues with a past participle.

Here are some of the top ‘hates’.

1 He never makes his bed. If I make it, I find strange things in it like dirty socks, CDs without their boxes.

2 He never ______ his room – it’s always a mess.
The floor is covered with empty Coke cans, more dirty socks.

3 She ______ wet towels on the bathroom floor and doesn’t pick them up.

4 She walks around the house eating food without a plate, usually just after I’ve ______ the floor: She then says ‘Sorry’ with an angelic smile.

5 He has breakfast, lunch, and dinner at home, but he never ______ the washing up.

6 When she comes into the living room she always ______ the channel on the TV – usually when I’m watching my favourite programme.

7 We bought a dog for him, because he promised to ______ it for a walk every day. Guess who always does it?

8 She always ______ her homework at the last minute – usually late on Sunday night. This means she needs the Internet, just when her sister is ‘chatting’ with her friends.

1 A Have you ______ yet?
   B No, not yet.
   A Well, hurry up! I’m going to be late for work.

2 A You’ve ______ a towel on the floor.
   B Well, I haven’t finished yet.
   A Well, don’t forget to pick it up.

3 A When are you going to do your homework?
   B I’ve already ______ it.
   A Really? When?
   A I did it on the bus this evening.

4 A Can you get a plate for that sandwich?
   B I’ve just ______ the floor.
   A OK. Oops – sorry. Too late.

C Look at the conversations and underline just, yet, and already. What tense is the verb with them? What do you think they mean?

D p.132 Grammar Bank 4B. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

a 4.5 Listen and repeat. Practise saying the sentences.

He hasn’t helped with the housework today.

Have you used your new computer yet?

Jim’s just joined a judo class.

b  Communication Has he done it yet? p.116.

c 4.6 Listen. What’s just happened?

4 READING

a Answer the questions in pairs.

1 At what age do young people usually leave home in your country?
2 What do you think is the right age for a young person to leave home? Why?

b Read the paragraphs and put them in order. Number them 1–5.

c Now read the whole article in order. Choose the best summary, A, B, or C.

A Mr and Mrs Serrano argued with their children. The children decided to leave home.
B Mr and Mrs Serrano argued a lot. Their children were unhappy so they left home.
C Mr and Mrs Serrano argued with their children a lot. They told their children to leave home.

d In pairs, underline any words or phrases you don’t know. Try to guess their meaning. Then check with the teacher or with your dictionary. Choose five to learn.

e Do you think Mr and Mrs Serrano were right or wrong? Why? Do you think the story has a happy ending?

f 4.7 Listen and check.

---

Problems with your teenage children?

Why not throw them out?

A What did the Serrano’s boys do? In fact they didn’t go very far from home. The oldest boy David went to live with his girlfriend and has just started work in her father’s construction company. The youngest son has rented a flat near the family home (his mother paid the first month’s rent only).

B So Maria and Mariano asked their sons to leave the family home in Zaragoza in Spain. But the two boys didn’t want to go. Then, Mr and Mrs Serrano took an unusual decision – they went to court.

C Do you have rude and moody teenage children living in your house? Have you ever secretly wanted to throw them out? A Spanish couple, Mr and Mrs Serrano, from Zaragoza in Spain, have done exactly that.

D Maria and her husband Mariano lived with their two sons, David, 20 and Mariano, 18. ‘The situation was impossible,’ said Maria. ‘We were always arguing, our children were treating our house like a hotel, and they weren’t contributing anything. Also they weren’t studying or looking for work. They were complaining all the time and insulting us. They didn’t respect us. I love my children, but in the end it was ruining our lives.’

E Normally, under Spanish law parents do not have the right to make their children leave home. But in this case the judge decided that the situation in the Serrano family was ‘intolerable’. He gave Mr and Mrs Serrano the right to tell their children to go.

Elizabeth Nash, The Independent 18/10/99
Faster, faster!

1 GRAMMAR comparatives, as... as, less... than...
   a) Read the introduction to the article We’re living faster...
      Is it optimistic or pessimistic? Why?
   b) Read it again and cross out the wrong word.
      According to James Gleick, today we...
      1 work longer / shorter hours.
      2 have more / less free time.
      3 talk faster / more slowly.
      4 are more relaxed / less relaxed.
      5 will probably have longer / shorter lives than our parents.
   c) Complete the sentences with as or than. Then check with the text.
      1 We sleep less ___ previous generations.
      2 If we don’t slow down, we won’t live ___ long ___ our parents.
   d) p.132 Grammar Bank 4C. Read the rules and do the exercises.

2 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress
   △ Remember! -er, and unstressed words like a, and, as, and than have the sound /ə/.
   4.8 Listen and repeat the sentences.
   Copy the rhythm.
   1 I’m busier than a year ago.
   2 Life is more stressful than in the past.
   3 We work harder than before.
   4 We walk and talk faster.
   5 I’m not as relaxed as I was.
   6 We won’t live as long as our parents.

3 READING & VOCABULARY
   a) You’re going to read about some ways in which our lives are faster. Work in pairs. A read 1–3, B read 4–6.
   b) A tell B about paragraphs 1–3, B tell A about paragraphs 4–6. Use the pictures to help you. Are any of these things true in your country?
   c) Now read paragraphs 1–6. In pairs, look at the highlighted expressions with the word time and guess their meaning.

WE’RE LIVING FASTER

NOT LONG AGO people believed that in the future we would work less, have more free time, and be more relaxed.
But sadly this has not happened. Today we work harder, work longer hours, and are more stressed than ten years ago.
We walk faster, talk faster, and sleep less than previous generations. And although we are obsessed with machines which save us time, we have less free time than our parents and grandparents had. But what is this doing to our health?
An American journalist James Gleick in a new book, Faster: the Acceleration of just about everything, says that people who live in cities are suffering from ‘hurry sickness’—we are always trying to do more things in less time. As a result, our lives are more stressful. He says that if we don’t slow down, we won’t live as long as our parents. For most people, faster doesn’t mean better.
4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 4.9 Look at the questionnaire. Listen to four people answering question 1. Which activity (working, studying, etc.) are they talking about?

1  
2  
3  
4  

b Listen again. Why do they spend more (or less) time on these things?

c In pairs, interview each other using the questionnaire.

ARE YOU LIVING FASTER…?

1 Compared to two years ago, do you spend more or less time on these things? Say why.
   - working or studying
   - sitting in traffic
   - cooking
   - talking on the phone
   - seeing friends
   - eating
   - working on a computer
   - shopping
   - sleeping

2 Do you have more or less free time than a year ago? Why?
   What don’t you have enough time for?

3 How do you get to work / school? How long does it take you?
   Is this longer than a year ago?

4 Do you usually arrive on time…? Why (not)?
   at work/school for your English class to meet your friends

5 What machines do you have which save you time?
   Do they make your life simpler or more complicated?

6 Do you waste a lot of time every day? Doing what?

BUT ARE WE LIVING BETTER?

1 No time for the news
   Newspaper articles today are shorter and the headlines are bigger. Most people don’t have enough time to read the articles, they only read the headlines! On TV and the radio, newsreaders speak more quickly than ten years ago.

2 No time for stories
   In the USA there is a book called One-Minute Bedtime Stories for children. These are shorter versions of traditional stories, specially written for ‘busy parents’ who want to save time!

3 No time to listen
   Some answerphones now have ‘quick playback’ buttons so that we can re-play people’s messages faster – we can’t waste time listening to people speaking at normal speed!

4 No time to relax
   Even when we relax we do everything more quickly. Ten years ago when people went to art galleries they spent ten seconds looking at each picture. Today they spend just three seconds!

5 No time for slow sports
   In the USA the national sport, baseball, is not as popular as before because it is a slow game and matches take a long time. Nowadays many people prefer faster and more dynamic sports like basketball.

6 …but more time in our cars
   The only thing that is slower than before is the way we drive. Our cars are faster but the traffic is worse so we drive more slowly. We spend more time sitting in our cars, feeling stressed because we are worried that we won’t arrive on time. Experts predict that in ten years’ time the average speed on the road in cities will be 17 km/h.
The world's friendliest city

1 READING & LISTENING

a. Read the introduction to the article. In pairs, answer the questions.
1. What are the three tests?
2. Do you think they are good ones?
3. Which city do you think will be the friendliest / most unfriendly?

Big cities often have a reputation for being rude, unfriendly places for tourists. Journalist Tim Moore went to four cities, London, Rome, Paris, and New York, to find out if this is true. He went dressed as a foreign tourist and did three tests to see which city had the friendliest and most polite inhabitants. The three tests were:

1. The photo test
Tim asked people in the street to take his photo (not just one photo, but several — with his hat, without his hat, etc.). Did he find someone to do it?

2. The shopping test
Tim bought something in a shop and gave the shop assistant too much money. Did the shop assistant give back the extra money?

3. The accident test
Tim pretended to fall over in the street. Did anybody come and help him?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New York</th>
<th>Paris</th>
<th>Rome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>The photo test</strong></td>
<td>I asked an office worker who was eating his sandwiches to take a photo of me. 'Of course I'll take your picture. Again? Sure! Again? No problem. Have a nice day!'</td>
<td>I asked some gardeners to take some photos of me in front of the Eiffel Tower. They couldn't stop laughing when they saw my hat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The shopping test</strong></td>
<td>I bought an I love New York T-shirt and drinks from two different people. I gave them too much money but they all gave me the extra money back.</td>
<td>I bought some fruit in a greengrocer's and gave the man a lot of coins. He carefully took the exact amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The accident test</strong></td>
<td>I fell over in Central Park. I didn't have to wait more than thirty seconds. 'Oh dear,' a man said. 'Is this your camera? I think it's broken.'</td>
<td>I fell over in the Champs Elysées. A minute passed before someone said. 'Are you OK?' And he was Scottish!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Read about what happened in New York, Paris, and Rome. Answer the questions with NY, P, or R.
1. Which city do you think was the friendliest in the photo test? __________
2. In which city did he take a photo too? __________
3. In the shopping test, where didn't he get the right change? __________
4. Where did he buy a souvenir? __________
5. In the accident test, where did he wait longest for help? __________
6. In which city were people most helpful? __________
4.10 Now listen to Tim Moore talking about what happened in London. Answer the questions.

**London**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The photo test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Who did he ask first?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 What did the man say?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Who did he ask next? What happened?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 What did he buy? Where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 How much was it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Did he get the right change?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Where did he do the accident test?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Did anyone help him?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 What did the man say?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The shopping test**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The shopping test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Who did he ask first?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 What did the man say?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Who did he ask next? What happened?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 What did he buy? Where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 How much was it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Did he get the right change?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Where did he do the accident test?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Did anyone help him?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 What did the man say?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 **PRONUNCIATION** word stress

- Underline the stressed syllable in the adjectives below.
  - Most polluted city I’ve ever been to.
  - Most impatient person I’ve ever met.
  - Most comfortable hotel I’ve ever stayed at.
  - Most interesting book I’ve ever read.
  - Most expensive shoes I’ve ever bought.
  - Most beautiful place I’ve ever seen.

4.11 Listen and check. What other words are stressed?

5 **SPEAKING**

- Communication The best and the worst A p.110 B p.114. Read your instructions and write the names of people, places, etc. in the ovals.

2 **GRAMMAR** superlatives (+ ever + present perfect)

- Cross out the wrong form in these questions.
  1. Which city was the friendliest / the friendliest of the four?
  2. Which city was the more unfriendly / the most unfriendly?
  3. What’s the friendliest place you’ve ever been to / gone to?

b Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

c p.132 Grammar Bank 4D. Read the rules and do the exercises.

3 **VOCABULARY** opposite adjectives

- What are the opposites of these adjectives?
  - friendly rude noisy boring


c In pairs, choose five questions and ask a partner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What’s ...</th>
<th>(unfriendly)</th>
<th>(beautiful)</th>
<th>(ugly)</th>
<th>(expensive)</th>
<th>(polluted)</th>
<th>(exciting)</th>
<th>(dangerous)</th>
<th>(noisy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the place you’ve ever been to?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Ask and answer about what your partner has written in the ovals. Ask for more information.

Why did you write Egypt? Because it’s the hottest place I’ve ever been to.

When did you go there?
DIRECTIONS

4.12 Listen to Allie talking to the hotel receptionist. Order the directions 1–5.

1. It’s the third street on the left.
2. Go straight ahead, down Sutter Street.
3. Go out of the hotel and turn left.
4. Union Square will be right in front of you.
5. Turn left at Stockton.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

a 4.15 Cover the dialogue and listen. Where does Allie want to go? How is she going to get there? Mark the route from Union Square on the map.

YOU SAY

Can you recommend a good museum?

Sorry? Where did you say?

Where is it?

How far is it from Union Square?

Can I walk from there?

Can you show me on the map?

YOU HEAR

Well, sfmoma is fantastic.

sfmoma. The San Francisco ________ of Modern Art.

On ________ Street.

Not far. It’s just a ________ of blocks.

Sure. It’ll ________ you ten minutes.

Yes, Union Square is here, and the museum is here. From Union Square you go down Geary to the ________ and turn right.

That’s Third Street. Go down Third and you’ll see sfmoma on the ________.

It opens at ________.

Have a good day. I’m sure you’ll ________ the museum!

b Complete the YOU HEAR phrases. Listen and check.

c 4.14 Listen and repeat the YOU SAY phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. A (book open) you’re the receptionist, B (book closed) you’re Allie. Swap roles.

SOCIAL ENGLISH looking for Union Square

a 4.15 Listen and circle a or b.

1. Allie and the man... a have met before.
   b haven’t met before.

2. Mark is... a meeting Allie later.
   b in a meeting.

3. Del Monaco’s is... a a coffee bar.
   b a restaurant.

4. Brad wants to... a go shopping with Allie.
   b take Allie to Union Square.

5. Brad loves... a Allie’s conversation.
   b Allie’s pronunciation.

b Complete the USEFUL PHRASES, Listen again and check.

c 4.16 Listen and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

USEFUL PHRASES

B Don’t I k______ you?
A I don’t t______ so.
B What are you d______ here?
A I’m l______ for (Union Square).
A That’s really k______ of you.
A Are you s______?
Describing where you live

a Read the text and match the questions with paragraphs 1–5.

1. What’s it famous for?
2. What’s the weather like?
3. What’s the best thing about it? Do you like living there?
4. Describe your home town.
5. Where do you live? Where is it! How big is it?

b Complete the text with these words.

atmosphere beach city festival museums
population river streets tourist weather

1. Porto is famous for port wine, who is only produced here (but I don’t like it much!). The biggest attraction in Porto is probably the — there are some beautiful bridges, including one designed by Eiffel, and lots of tourists goes on boat trips. There’s a in June called São Joao, with a lot of fireworks and people in the streets, and everybody spends most of the evening hitting each other with plastic hammers!

2. It’s a beautiful city, and it’s great for walking around. There are lots of narrow , and it’s full of churches, , and markets. There’s an area called Foz where 

3. The here is very different from the south of Portugal. The winter can be very wet, and it sometimes rain for days. The summer is wonderful — it’s sunny but not usually too hot, and it’s great for going to the mountains or the .

4. The biggest attraction in Porto is probably the — there are some beautiful bridges, including one designed by Eiffel, and lots of tourists goes on boat trips. There’s a in June called São Joao, with a lot of fireworks and people in the streets, and everybody spends most of the evening hitting each other with plastic hammers!

5. But I think the best things about Porto are the people and the . It’s quite small and it’s very safe and friendly. It’s a working city and it has a real sense of history, and that’s the main reason why I like live here so much.

WRITE a description of the place where you live.
Write five paragraphs. Answer the questions in a in the right order.

CHECK your description for mistakes (grammer, punctuation, and spelling) and attach a photo if you can.
4 What do you remember?

**GRAMMAR**
Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What’s _____ name?
- a yours
- b your
- c you

1. _____ ever been to a Zara shop?
   - a Do you
   - b Have you
   - c Did you

2. I’ve never _____ him in a suit and tie.
   - a seen
   - b see
   - c saw

3. You haven’t done the washing up ______.
   - a already
   - b just
   - c yet

4. A Would you like a coffee?
   - B No, thanks. _____ had four cups today.
   - a I’ve had already
   - b I’ve already had
   - c I already have had

5. I’ve _____ cleaned the floor. It’s wet.
   - a already
   - b just
   - c yet

6. The traffic is _____ than it was.
   - a badder
   - b worse
   - c more bad

7. Radio newsreaders speak more _____ than before.
   - a quickly
   - b quick
   - c quicker

8. Baseball isn’t as _____ it was in the past.
   - a popular than
   - b popular that
   - c popular as

9. What’s the _____ city you’ve ever seen?
   - a most beautiful
   - b more beautiful
   - c beautifulest

10. This is the _____ city in the world.
    - a most noisy
    - b noisiest
    - c noisier

**VOCABULARY**

a verb phrases
Complete the phrases.

_____ make your bed
- do
- pick up
- take out
- tidy
- waste

1. _____ your room
2. _____ things on the floor
3. _____ the rubbish
4. _____ the washing up
5. _____ time

b clothes
Complete the sentences.

That’s a very nice jacket.
1. Levi’s are famous for their j_______.
2. Business people usually have to wear a s_______ to work.
3. I always t_______ on clothes before I buy them.
4. Take off your coat. It’s very hot in here.
5. I wear my t_______ when I do sport.

c adjectives
Write the opposite adjective.

big __________
1. rude
2. noisy
3. possible
4. dangerous
5. patient

**PRONUNCIATION**

a Underline the word with a different sound.

1. shirt
2. work
3. coat
4. skirt

3 bought
4 blouse
5 trousers
6 mouth

7 friendly
8 pretty
9 men
10 many

11 make
12 trainers
13 great
14 earn

b Underline the stressed syllable.

information

1. pyjamas
2. already
3. nearly
4. busier
5. friendliest

10
What can you do?

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

In 1952, Audrey Hepburn was going to marry a playboy.
She wanted to get married in Rome.
Her wedding dress was white with flowers on it.
Before the wedding she fell in love with another man.
She asked Zoe Fontana to give the dress to a friend.
Amabile Altobello was the same age as Audrey Hepburn.
The people of Latina also gave her things for her house.
She and her husband are still married.

a. Read the article and mark the sentences T (true), F (false), or DS (doesn’t say).
1. Audrey Hepburn was going to marry a playboy.
2. She wanted to get married in Rome.
3. Her wedding dress was white with flowers on it.
4. Before the wedding she fell in love with another man.
5. She asked Zoe Fontana to give the dress to a friend.
6. Amabile Altobello was the same age as Audrey Hepburn.
7. The people of Latina also gave her things for her house.
8. She and her husband are still married.

b. Guess the meaning of the highlighted words.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

a. Listen and circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.
1. He thought the fashion show was ___________.
   a. exciting  b. interesting  c. boring
2. The woman bought ___________.
   a. a shirt  b. a skirt  c. some shoes
3. The floor is ___________.
   a. wet  b. dry  c. dirty
4. What time does he finish work?
   a. 7.00  b. 8.00  c. 9.00
5. The most beautiful city he’s been to is ___________.
   a. Venice  b. Prague  c. Amsterdam

b. Listen to an interview with a model.
Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1. She often wears clothes she doesn’t like.
2. She broke her leg during a fashion show.
3. She hasn’t been to Africa.
4. She went to Argentina two years ago.
5. She would like to go to India again.

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a. Can you...? Yes (√)
   □ say what clothes you wore yesterday
   □ say what housework you / other people in your family do
   □ say if you have more or less free time than last year, and why

b. Make five questions with the present perfect and a superlative.

   What / good book / ever / read?
   What’s the best book you’ve ever read?
   1. What / hot place / ever / be to?
   2. What / bad film / ever / see?
   3. Who / generous person / ever / meet?
   4. What / good restaurant / ever / be to?
   5. What / long journey / make?

c. Ask your partner the questions in b.
Are you a party animal?

How to survive at a party...
(when you don’t know anybody!)

Has this ever happened to you? You arrive at a party or wedding reception where you don’t know anybody. Everybody there seems to know each other. What can you do? Here are five simple tips.

1. Don’t stand in the corner. You need 1 to be positive. Find somebody you think you would like 2 and go and introduce yourself.

2. Try 3 impersonal questions like ‘I love your bag. Where did you get it?’ That will help 4 a conversation.

3. Try 5 the conversation. When you are nervous, it’s very easy 6 about yourself all the time. Nobody wants 7 your life story when they’ve only just met you.

4. Smile, smile, smile. Use your body-language 8 to give a positive, friendly impression. That way people will want 9 to you.

5. If you want 10 from a really boring person, say that you are going to the bar 11 another drink or that you need 12 to the bathroom. Don’t come back!

1 SPEAKING

Interview a partner with the questionnaire. Ask for more information. Is your partner a ‘party animal’?

Do you like going to parties? Why (not)?
Do you like giving parties? Why (not)?

When was the last time you went to a party or celebration? (For example, a wedding, a birthday party, etc.)

Whose party was it?
Did you have a good time?
What did you wear?
What kind of music did they play?
Did you dance?
Did you meet anybody new?
What did you have to eat and drink?
Did you stay until the end?

2 GRAMMAR uses of the infinitive (with to)

a Read the article about parties. Complete the five rules with an infinitive.

to ask to be not to dominate to escape to get
to give to go to listen to meet to start to talk (x2)

b Read the article again and then cover it. Can you remember the tips?

c Match the examples A–C from the text with rules 1–3.

A It’s very easy to talk about yourself all the time.
B Say that you’re going to the bar to get another drink.
C Try to ask impersonal questions.

Use the infinitive (with to) ...

1 after some verbs (e.g. want, try, etc.)
2 after adjectives
3 to say why you do something.

p.134 Grammar Bank 5A. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 READING & LISTENING

a Read this article about the right things to say to different people at parties. In pairs, guess how to complete the Don't say phrases.

b 5.1 Now listen to some people at a party who say the wrong things. Complete the Don't say phrases. Did you guess any of them?

c Listen to the people at the party again. Complete the conversations with an infinitive.

Conversation 1 I want _______ him a 'Happy Birthday'.
Conversation 2 Perhaps you would like _______ my class one day.
Conversation 3 I'd like _______ somewhere _______.
Conversation 4 You're just the person I want _______ to.
Conversation 5 I need _______ to the _______.

4 VOCABULARY verbs + infinitive

a ➔ p.154 Vocabulary Bank Verb forms (Verb + infinitive). Look at some other verbs followed by the infinitive. Highlight any that you didn't know.


5 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

⚠️ Two- and three-syllable words usually have the stress on the first syllable. Always underline the stress in new words.

a In pairs underline the stressed syllable in these words.

    dangerous decide difficult forget important interesting possible pretend promise remember

b 5.2 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

c Choose five questions and ask a partner.

Do you find it difficult to remember people's names?

Do you think it’s important to learn to cook?

What’s the most interesting place to visit in your town?

Have you ever forgotten to turn off your mobile in a cinema or a concert?

Do you think it’s possible to learn a foreign language without going to the country?

Is there any part of your town where it’s dangerous to go at night?

Do you always remember to phone your friends on their birthdays?

When was the last time you promised not to come home late?

Have you ever pretended to be ill (when you weren’t)?

Have you decided to go anywhere next summer?
What makes you feel good?

We asked readers from all over the world to tell us what makes them feel good.

• Eating outside. I love sitting at street cafés or having meals in the garden, even when the weather’s not perfect – which it often isn’t.
• Getting out of the city. It doesn’t matter where to, to the beach, or to the country, or to the forest. Being in the middle of nature makes me feel alive.
• Being with people I like (and not being with people I don’t like).
• Watching heavy rain storms through the window from a comfortable, warm room with a fire, and knowing I don’t need to go out.
• Sitting on a plane when it takes off – you can’t control what’s going to happen for the next 2–3 hours so you can really relax.
• Talking to intelligent people: good conversation is one of life’s great pleasures.
• Waking up on a sunny morning during my holidays when I know I have a whole day ahead to do the things I really like doing.
• Having time for myself. Unfortunately, it doesn’t happen very often.
• Reading books or magazines in English – I’m Hungarian, and I still find it hard to believe that I can enjoy reading without using a dictionary in a language that once was a complete mystery.
• Tidying a cupboard. It stops me from thinking about my problems.

1 READING

a Read the article once. How many people mention...?

1 the weather
2 holidays and travelling
3 housework
4 nature
5 other people

b Read the article again and tick (√) the three things you agree with most. Then put a cross (x) next to any you don’t agree with. Compare with a partner. Say why.

c Underline five new words or phrases you want to learn from the text.

2 GRAMMAR verb + -ing

A Being with people I like (makes me feel good).
B I love sitting at cafés...
C I can enjoy reading without using a dictionary.

a Match sentences A–C with rules 1–3.

Use the -ing form...

1 after some verbs (e.g. like, love, etc.)
2 when we use a verb as a noun (e.g. as the subject of a sentence)
3 when we use a verb after a preposition

b Look at the highlighted verbs. Can you remember the spelling rules for making the -ing form?

c p.134 Grammar Bank SB. Read the rules and do the exercises.

d Now write two things that make you feel good (that are not in the article). Compare with a partner.
3 PRONUNCIATION  -ing

a 5.3 Listen and repeat the sound picture and the words.

thing  bring  wrong  language
sitting  watching  thanks  think

b ☞ p.159 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings for this sound.

⚠️ When we add -ing /ɪŋ/ to a verb, the pronunciation of the original verb doesn’t change.
do /dzu:/ → doing /dzu:ɪŋ/
forget → forgetting

c 5.4 Listen and say the -ing form of the verbs you hear.

5 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

a ☞ p.154 Vocabulary Bank Verb forms (Verb + -ing).
Look at other verbs which are followed by the -ing form.

b Work in pairs. Choose five things to talk about from the list below.

da job you  don’t mind doing in the house
da sport you  enjoy watching
something you  like doing with your family
something you  love doing in the summer
something you  hate doing at work / school
something you  spend a lot of time doing
somebody you  dream of meeting
something you  don’t like doing alone
a country you are  interested in visiting
something you are  thinking of doing this weekend
something you have  stopped doing
something you are not very  good at doing

c A tell B about the five things. Say why. B ask for more information. Then swap roles.

I don’t mind cooking. It’s quite relaxing.

Do you cook every day?

5 LISTENING

a Ask and answer these questions in pairs.

Do you ever sing...
in the shower
in the car
at karaoke bars
while you’re listening to a CD
in a choir /kwɔːr/ or a band

b In pairs, say if you think sentences 1-7 are T (true) or F (false).

1 Singing is good for your health.
2 To sing well you need to learn to breathe correctly.
3 People who sing are fatter than people who don’t.
4 Not everybody can learn to sing.
5 You need to know how to read music to be able to sing well.
6 If you make a surprised face, you can sing high notes better.
7 It takes a long time to learn to sing better.

c 5.5 Now listen to an interview with the director of a singing school and a student who did a course there. Were you right?

d Listen again. Choose the right answer.

1 When you are learning to sing you need to _______ correctly.
   a stand  b dress  c eat
2 Singing well is 95% _______.
   a repeating  b listening  c breathing
3 Gemma’s course lasted _______.
   a one day  b one week  c one month
4 Gemma has always _______.
   a been good at singing  b been in a choir  c liked singing
5 In the morning the students learnt to _______.
   a breathe and sing  b listen and breathe  c listen and sing
6 At the end of the afternoon they could sing _______.
   a perfectly  b much better  c a bit better
1 **GRAMMAR**  *have to, don’t have to, must, mustn’t*

a. Look at these notices. Have you seen any like these in your school?

- **A** SILENCE
  - Exam in progress
- **B** Tonight’s film: *Pirates of the Caribbean*
  - Entrance free
- **C** Course fees
  - to be paid in advance
- **D** No mobile phones
- **E** No food here please
- **F** Extra pronunciation class
  - at 5pm

b. Match the notices with the rules.

1. You have to pay before you start.  
2. You don’t have to come if you don’t want to.  
3. You mustn’t eat in here.  
4. You must turn off your mobiles before you come in.  
5. You mustn’t talk near here.  
6. You don’t have to pay to see this.

   ![Checkboxes for matching notices and rules](image)

c. Look at the highlighted expressions and answer the questions.

1. Which two phrases mean...
   - It is a rule. There’s an obligation to do this.  
   - You have to 

2. Which phrase means...
   - It isn’t obligatory. It isn’t necessary.  
   - You don’t have to

3. Which phrase means...
   - It isn’t permitted. It is against the rules.  
   - You mustn’t

d. ☞ p.134 Grammar Bank 5C. Read the rules and do the exercises.

2 **PRONUNCIATION**  *sentence stress*

a. 5.6 Listen and write the six sentences.

b. Listen again and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm. Which letter is ‘silent’ in *mustn’t*?

c. Make true sentences about the rules in the school where you are studying English. Use *We have to, We don’t have to, or We mustn’t.*

1. _______ come to lessons on time.  
2. _______ turn off our mobile phones.  
3. _______ eat or drink in the classroom.  
4. _______ come to class on Saturday.  
5. _______ bring a dictionary to class.  
6. _______ do an exam at the end of the year.  
7. _______ smoke in the building.  
8. _______ do homework after each lesson.  
9. _______ do a test every week.
How much can you learn in a month?

I work for a magazine, which was doing an article about British language learners. As an experiment, they asked me to learn a completely new language for one month. Then I had to go to the country and do some ‘tests’ to see if I could ‘survive’ in different situations. I decided to learn Polish because my great-grandmother was Polish and I have some relatives there. I can already speak French and Spanish quite well but Polish isn’t a Latin-based language so I knew it would be completely different.

I did a one-month intensive course at a language school in Birmingham. I thought I was good at languages before I started learning Polish, but now I’m not so sure. I found it incredibly difficult. The grammar was really complicated and the words were not like any other language I know so it was very hard to remember them. For example, I thought ‘football’ was more or less an international word, but in Polish it’s *piłka nożna*. And the pronunciation is unbelievable! Every word is full of z’s where you don’t expect them, like *jeździsz* which means ‘you go’.

My course finished yesterday and I’m going to Kraków for the weekend to do my tests. A local guide called Kasia is coming with me and is going to give me a mark out of 10.

These are the tests and the rules:

**Tests**

1. get a taxi.
2. order a drink in a bar.
3. ask for directions (and follow them).
4. phone and ask to speak to someone.
5. ask somebody the time.

**Rules**

- you mustn’t use a dictionary or phrasebook.
- you mustn’t speak English at any time.
- you mustn’t use your hands or mime.

---

5.7 Which test do you think will be the easiest for Anna? Which will be the most difficult? Listen to Anna doing the tests in Kraków and check your answers.

d Listen again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the false ones.
1. The taxi driver couldn’t speak English.
2. Anna understood the waitress’s question.
3. She ordered a small Coke.
4. Anna asked for directions to a bank.
5. She couldn’t understand what the woman said.
6. The man on the phone could understand her, but she couldn’t understand him.
7. Anna thought telling the time in Polish was very easy.
8. She didn’t find out what the time was.
9. Kasia gave her eight out of ten for her Polish.

4 SPEAKING

a How well could you do Anna’s five tests in English? How much do you think you can learn in a month?

b Talk to a partner.

Have you ever...

spoken in English on the phone? Who to? What about?
seen a film in English? Which? How much did you understand?
speaking to a friend in English? When? Why?
read an English book or magazine? Which one?
asked for directions in a foreign city? Where? What happened?
learned another foreign language? How well can you speak it?

5 VOCABULARY modifiers

I found Polish incredibly difficult.
I felt a bit stupid when the taxi driver spoke perfect English.

a Complete the chart with the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a bit</th>
<th>incredibly</th>
<th>not-very</th>
<th>quite</th>
<th>really</th>
<th>very</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Polish is ______ very difficult

not very

b Complete the sentences with one of the words so they are true for you. Compare with a partner.
1. I’m ______ good at learning languages.
2. I’m ______ motivated to improve my English.
3. English pronunciation is ______ difficult.
4. English grammar is ______ complicated.
5. I’m ______ worried about the next exam.
6. English is ______ useful for my work / studies.
The name of the game

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
sport, prepositions of movement

a Look at the photos. Can you name the sports? Write them in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>play</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

b 5.8 Listen and check.

c In pairs, say...
Which of the sports in a are usually team sports?
How many players are there?
In which sports do you play?

a hit the ball b throw the ball c kick the ball d shoot

d Ask and answer with a partner.
Do you do any sports? Which one(s)?
Which sports do you enjoy watching?
Which sports do you hate watching?
Are you (or anyone in your family) a fan of a sports team?
Which one?
Do you (or they) watch their matches? Where?

e Where did the ball go? Complete with a preposition.

across along down into over

58

The ball went across the wall, along the street, down the steps, into the road, and over the river.


2 GRAMMAR expressing movement

The rules of the game

1 You play this sport outside with one, two, or more players. You have to hit the ball into a small hole. You mustn’t hit the ball into the water.

2 You can play this sport outside or inside with two or four players. You have to hit the ball over a net and the ball mustn’t go ‘out’.

3 You usually do this sport outside (but it can be inside). You have to go round a track many times and be the first one to go past the finish line. Sometimes you have to go round a country, for example, France.

4 You play this sport outside with two teams. You have to pass the ball to other players with your foot and try to kick the ball into the goal. You mustn’t touch the ball with your hands.

5 You play this sport outside with two teams. You have to throw the ball to other players and take the ball over the other team’s line. You can also get points from kicking the ball through two very high posts.

a Match the rules to the sports in 1. What are the sports?

b 5.9 Listen and check.

c Look at the sports rules again and the highlighted words. How do you express movement in English?

d p.134 Grammar Bank 5D. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 PRONUNCIATION prepositions

a Match the prepositions with the phonetics. How do you pronounce the words?

across along into over round through towards

1 /ɪn'tuə/ ____________
2 /ə'laʊŋ/ ____________
3 /raʊnd/ ____________
4 /ə'wəxʌdʒ/ ____________
5 /ə'krɒs/ ____________
6 /ə'thruː/ ____________
7 /ə'təʊdəz/ ____________

b 5.10 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable, and practise saying the prepositions.

c Communication Cross country p.117. Tell your partner where the runner went.

4 READING & SPEAKING

a How long does a normal football match last? How many minutes are added after each half?

b Read the article and complete it with a word from below.

champions fans goal match pitch players referee scored stadium team

c Read the text again. Number the sentences 1–6.

A Manchester United scored their first goal. [ ]
B The Bayern Munich fans started celebrating. [ ]
C The 90 minutes finished and the referee added three minutes. [ ]
D Bayern Munich scored a goal. [ ]
E Manchester United scored their second goal. [ ]
F The UEFA president left his seat to go to present the cup. [ ]

d What is the most exciting sporting event you’ve ever seen? Prepare your answers to these questions.

1 What sport was it?
2 When and where was it?
3 Who was taking part?
4 Were you there or did you see it on TV?
5 What happened?

e Ask and answer with a partner.

5 3.11 SONG ♪ We are the champions
BUYING CLOTHES

5.12 Listen to Allie shopping. Answer the questions.
1 What does Allie want to buy?
2 What size is she?
3 Does she try it on?
4 How much does Allie think it costs?
5 How does she pay?

TAKING SOMETHING BACK

a 5.13 Cover the dialogue and listen. What’s the problem with Allie’s sweater? Does she change it or ask for her money back?

YOU HEAR
Can I help you?
Yes, I remember. Is there a ________?
What ________ is it?
So you need a ________
I don’t see one here.
I’ll go and check. Just a ________
I’m sorry but we don’t have a ________ one in black.
We can order one for you.
It’ll only take a few ________.
Would you like to exchange it for ________ else?
No problem. Do you ________ the receipt?

YOU SAY
Yes, I bought this sweater about half an hour ago.
Yes, I’ve decided it’s too big for me.
Yes, I’d like to return it.
Medium.
Do you have any more?
Oh dear.
No, I’m leaving on Saturday.
Not really. Could I have a refund?
Yes, here you are.

b Listen again. Complete the YOU HEAR phrases.

c 5.14 Listen and repeat the YOU SAY phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. A (book open) you’re the shop assistant, B (book closed) you’re Allie. Swap roles.

SOCIAL ENGLISH  the conference cocktail party

a 5.15 Listen and complete with Mark, Allie, or Brad.
1 Allie tells ________ about the shopping and museum.
2 ________ comes to say hello to ________ and ________.
3 ________ is surprised that ________ and ________ met this morning.
4 ________ asks ________ if she wants a drink.
5 ________ is annoyed, but goes to get the drinks.

b Complete the USEFUL PHRASES. Listen again and check.

c 5.16 Listen and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

USEFUL PHRASES
M What did you t ________ of it?
A Never m ________.
A What a l ________ evening!
A I got l ________.
M What would you like to d ________?
B What a good i ________.
a. Read the e-mail to a language school. Tick (√) the questions that Adriano wants the school to answer.

- How much do the courses cost?
- When do the courses start and finish?
- How many students are there in a class?
- Are there Business English classes?
- Where can I stay?
- Where are the teachers from?

b. Look at the **highlighted** expressions. How would they be different in an informal e-mail (or letter)?

**Formal e-mail**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dear Sir / Madam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I would like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I look forward to hearing from you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours faithfully</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informal e-mail**

| __________ |
| __________ |
| __________ |
| __________ |

---

From: Adriano Ruocco [adrianor@tiscali.net]

To: The Grange Language School [enquiries@grangeedinburgh]

Subject: Information about courses

Dear Sir / Madam,

I am writing to ask for information about your language courses. I am especially interested in an intensive course of two or three weeks. I am 31 and I work in the library at Milan University. I can read English quite well but I need to improve my listening and speaking. The book I am currently studying is ‘pre-intermediate’ (Common European Framework level A2).

I have looked at your website, but there is no information about intensive courses next summer. Could you please send me information about dates and prices? I would also like some information about accommodation. If possible I would like to stay with a family. My wife is going to visit me for a weekend when I am at the school. Could she stay with me in the same family?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Adriano Ruocco

---

c. Read the advertisements and choose a course. Think of two or three questions you would like to ask.

**Thai Cookery courses in Chiang Mai**

Learn to cook Thai food in northern Thailand.

One week courses, from April to October.

Your accommodation in Chiang Mai is included.

Beginners welcome. E-mail us for more information at thaicook@blueelephant.com

---

**Tennis courses in France**

One- or two-week courses in different parts of the country. Professional tennis coaches. All levels, beginners to advanced. Small groups or private lessons. For more information e-mail us at info@tennisinfrance.com

---

WRITE a formal e-mail asking for information. Write two paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Explain why you are writing and give some personal information.

Paragraph 2: Ask your questions, and ask them to send you information.

CHECK your e-mail for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).
GRAMMAR
Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What’s ______ name?

a  yours  b your  c you

1 We want ______ a party next month.
   a have  b to have  c having

2 It’s often difficult ______ new friends.
   a to make  b make  c for make

3 She bought a new dress ______ at the party.
   a for to wear  b for wear  c to wear

4 ______ early on a sunny morning makes me feel good.
   a Waking up  b Wake up  c To wake up

5 My brother doesn’t enjoy ______ by plane.
   a travel  b to travel  c travelling

6 I’m tired of ______ TV. Let’s do something different.
   a to watch  b watching  c watch

7 I like Saturdays because I ______ work.
   a mustn’t  b don’t have to  c haven’t to

8 She can’t come to the cinema because she ______ to study.
   a must  b have  c has

9 You ______ be late for class tomorrow. You have an exam.
   a mustn’t  b mustn’t to  c don’t must

10 The golf ball ______ the hill and into the river.
   a down  b downed  c went down

VOCABULARY

a  verb phrases
Complete the sentences.

decide  dream of  forget  hate  hope  learn  mind  need  start  try

1 A Which film do you want to see? B I don’t ______. You choose.
2 Don’t ______ to buy some milk at the supermarket.
3 I ______ finding the perfect job.
4 Your hair’s very long. You ______ to go to the hairdresser’s.
5 What did you ______? Are you coming or not?
6 I’d like to ______ to play chess. Can you teach me?
7 I always travel by train or car because I ______ flying.
8 I ______ to see you soon.
9 ______ to read in English as much as you can.
10 Don’t ______ running until your hear ‘Go’.

b  prepositions of movement
Complete the sentences with a preposition.

In the 100 metres race the athletes have to run ______ a track.

1 In golf you have to hit the ball ______ the hole.
2 In tennis you have to hit the ball ______ the net.
3 In football you have to pass the ball ______ the other players on your team.
4 In Formula 1 you have to drive ______ a track.
5 In rugby you have to kick the ball ______ the posts.

b  sport verbs
Complete the sentences with play, do, and go in the correct form.

1 We ______ football every Saturday. 4 She often ______ cycling after work.
2 I ______ skiing last year. 5 They love ______ aerobics.
3 He ______ judo twice a week.

PRONUNCIATION

a  Underline the word with a different sound

1  hit  mind  kick  finish

2  promise  like  decide  tired

3  hate  have  game  race

4  out  round  down  throw

5  through  mustn’t  doing  music

b  Underline the stressed syllable.

promise  decide  forget  enjoy  practise
What can you do?

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article. Is Alexandra Kosteniuk…?
1 beautiful but not very good at chess.
2 not very beautiful but good at chess.
3 beautiful and good at chess.

b Read the article again and mark the sentences T (true), F (false), or DS (doesn’t say).
1 The International Chess Federation wants chess to have a more modern image.
2 Alexandra never wears glasses.
3 Alexandra’s father taught her to play chess.
4 She became a grandmaster after playing chess for five years.
5 She thinks that chess should be more popular.
6 If you have Internet access, you can play chess with Alexandra.
7 Nigel Short has an attractive personality.

The new face of chess

17-year-old Alexandra Kosteniuk is sometimes called the Anna Kournikova of the chess world. The International Chess Federation have asked her to be the new face of the game, which traditionally has had an image of middle-aged men wearing glasses.

Alexandra started playing chess when she was five. She learnt to play from her father, and became a grandmaster when she was only 14. Experts say that her game is one of the most exciting they have seen for a long time.

‘Chess is not as popular as it should be, and I think I could help it,’ Kosteniuk said last week. ‘It is an honour for me to be described as the face of the game.’ She has her own website with pictures, poems, and the opportunity to play chess against her.

Making the game faster is another part of the campaign to make chess more popular. There are now strict time limits for making moves. Games that before lasted for hours can now take place in five minutes. The longest international tournament games, which sometimes took days, now last only four to seven hours.

Nigel Short, the British grandmaster, says, ‘There are a lot of attractive women in chess, but Alexandra Kosteniuk has made a very big impression. She is obviously very talented. Any sport needs attractive personalities, and I have no problem with marketing the game through her.’

Adapted from a British newspaper

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

a 5.17 Listen to five short conversations. Circle a, b, or c.
1 Anna _____ to go to the party.
   a wants  b doesn’t want  c isn’t sure if she wants
2 The concert was _______.
   a awful  b quite good  c very good
3 Maria is ______ late for class.
   a never  b hardly ever  c often
4 The woman speaks ______ very well.
   a French  b German  c Italian
5 Henry kicked the ball _______.
   a into the goal  b over the top of the goal  c to the left of the goal

b 5.18 Listen and complete the form for the Milford Sports Centre.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sport:</th>
<th>Day:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time:</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Ask your partner the questions in b. Ask for more information.

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a Can you…? Yes (√)
   □ talk about the last party you went to
   □ talk about what makes you feel good and why
   □ say what you have to do to learn a language
   □ describe the rules for a sport you know

b Complete the questions with a verb in the -ing form or infinitive.
1 Where do you want _____ for your next holiday?
2 Have you ever tried to learn _____?
   What happened?
3 Do you enjoy _____? Why (not)?
4 Do you have to _____ at work / school?
5 What sport would you like _____?
If something bad can happen, it will

1 GRAMMAR if + present, will + infinitive
a Read the beginning of the story. Why do you think the Italian doesn’t want to lend his newspaper to the American?

A young American was travelling to Venice on the Orient Express. It was a long journey, and he was bored. Sitting opposite him there was an Italian man. He was about 50 years old. He had an English newspaper on the seat next to him.

‘Excuse me,’ the American said. ‘Can I borrow your newspaper?’

‘No,’ said the Italian. ‘I’m sorry. You can’t.’

‘Why not?’ asked the American.

‘Well,’ said the Italian, ‘it’s quite simple…’

b Look at the pictures. Number the rest of the story 1–9.
- ‘If you meet Nicoletta, you’ll fall in love with her.’
- ‘If we start talking, we’ll become friends.’
- ‘If I invite you to my house, you’ll meet my beautiful daughter, Nicoletta.’
- ‘So that’s why I won’t lend you my newspaper.’
- ‘If I find you, I’ll kill you.’
- ‘If you fall in love with her, you’ll run away together.’
- ‘If we become friends, I’ll invite you to my house in Venice.’
- ‘If I lend you my newspaper, we’ll start talking.’
- ‘If you run away, I’ll find you.’

2 VOCABULARY confusing verbs
a What’s the difference between know and meet, and borrow and lend? Underline the right verb.
1 You’ll know / meet my beautiful daughter Nicoletta.
2 Do you know / meet my sister’s boyfriend?
3 Can I borrow / lend your newspaper?
4 If I borrow / lend you my newspaper, we’ll start talking.

b p.149 Vocabulary Bank Verbs. Do part 2.

3 READING
a If you are in a supermarket and you change queues, what will happen?

b Read the first paragraph of the article Murphy’s Law. Who was Murphy? What exactly is his law?

c Read the rest of the article. Can you guess how the examples 1–8 of Murphy’s Law finish?
**Murphy’s Law**

If you change queues in a supermarket, what will happen? The queue you were in before will move more quickly. You know what will happen, because there’s a law of life that says, ‘if something bad can happen, it will happen.’ It’s called Murphy’s Law, and it took its name from Captain Edward Murphy, an American aeroplane engineer from the 1940s. He was investigating why planes crashed, and not surprisingly, he got a reputation for always thinking of the worst thing that can happen in every situation...

**At home**

1. If you wash your car,...
2. If you look for something you’ve lost,...

**Social life**

3. If you wear something white,...
4. If someone near you is smoking,...

**Shopping**

5. If you find something in a shop that you really like,...
6. If you take something that doesn’t work back to a shop,...

**Transport**

7. If you stop waiting for a bus and start walking,...
8. If you get to the station and a train is just leaving,...

d. Now match them with A–H from the box below.

- A you’ll spill wine or coffee on it.
- B it’ll rain.
- C they won’t have it in your size.
- D it’ll be your train.
- E the bus will come.
- F it’ll start working.
- G you’ll find it in the last place you look.
- H the smoke will always go directly towards you.

e. In pairs, look only at the first half of the sentences in the text. How many of the ‘laws’ can you remember? Can you think of any others?
**Never smile at a crocodile**

**Would you survive?**

We all enjoy seeing wild animals on the television. But what would happen if we met one in real life? Do our animal quiz and see if you would survive.

1. **What would you do...**
   ...if you were in the middle of a river and suddenly you saw a crocodile swimming quickly towards you?
   
   a. I would try to swim to the bank as quickly as possible.
   b. I wouldn't move. I'd stay still and wait for the crocodile to go away.
   c. I would try to hit the crocodile in the face.

2. **What would you do...**
   ...if you were in a forest and a very large bear came towards you?
   
   a. I would climb up the nearest tree.
   b. I would lie on the ground and pretend to be dead.
   c. I would run away as fast as I could.

3. **What would you do...**
   ...if you were in the middle of a field and a bull started running towards you?
   
   a. I would run.
   b. I would throw something (e.g. my hat) in another direction.
   c. I would shout and wave my arms.

---

**1 SPEAKING & LISTENING**

a. Read the quiz and tick (✓) your answers, a, b, or c. Compare with a partner.

b. Now listen to a survival expert. Did you choose the right answer?

c. Listen again. Why are the other two answers wrong? Compare what you heard with a partner.

---

**2 GRAMMAR** *if* + past, *would* + infinitive

a. Look at question 1 in *Would you survive?* and answer these questions.

1. Is the crocodile situation...?
   a. one which could easily happen to you
   OR
   b. one which is not very probable.

2. What tense of the verb goes after *if*?
3. What's the form of the other verbs in the question and in the answers?

b. p.136 Grammar Bank 6B. Read the rules and do the exercises.

---

**3 PRONUNCIATION** stress and rhythm

a. 6.5 Listen and repeat the sentence halves and then the whole sentence. Copy the rhythm.

1. If I saw a crocodile, I'd climb a tree.
2. What would you do if you saw a snake?
3. We could have a dog if we had a garden.
4. If a bear attacked me, I wouldn't move.
5. If I were you, I'd go on a safari.

b. Cover the right-hand column. Try to remember the sentences.
4 VOCABULARY animals

a Answer the questions with a partner.
1 Do (or did you) have a pet? What?
2 What's the most dangerous animal in your country?
3 What's your favourite film about an animal?
4 What's your favourite cartoon animal?
5 If you went on a safari, what animal would you most like to see?
6 Are there any animals or insects you are really afraid of?
7 If you were an animal, what would you like to be?

b \(\Rightarrow\) p.151 Vocabulary Bank Animals.

c 6.6 Listen. Which animal can you hear?

6 READING

a Can you remember the best way to survive a crocodile attack?

b Read the article about crocodiles and mark the sentences T (true), F (false), or DS (doesn't say).
1 The Australian crocodile is bigger than all other kinds.
2 Crocodiles can run faster than horses.
3 Crocodiles only attack you if you are in the water.
4 The German tourist didn't know that there might be crocodiles in the lake.
5 The crocodile also attacked the girl's friend.
6 The Australian boy was killed when he and his friends were swimming in a river.
7 His friends escaped by climbing a tree.
8 Norman Pascoe's aunt was attacked by a crocodile.
9 She hit it on the nose, and it opened its mouth.

NATURE'S PERFECT KILLING MACHINE

THE AUSTRALIAN CROCODILE is the largest crocodile in the world. It can grow up to seven metres long and the biggest can weigh up to 1000 kilos. It has only two muscles to open its mouth but 40 to close it!

What makes crocodiles so dangerous is that they attack incredibly quickly and they take their victims under the water to drown them. They usually attack in the water, but they can suddenly come out of a river and attack animals or people, and they can run on land at 17 km/h.

Every year in Australia there are crocodile attacks on humans. Two years ago a 24-year-old German tourist died when she went for a swim in a lake. Although there were signs warning people that there might be crocodiles, the girl and her friends decided to have a midnight swim. The girl suddenly disappeared and next morning her body was found. Near it was a four-metre crocodile.

And only last month two Australian boys watched in horror as their friend was killed by a crocodile when they were washing their mountain bikes in a river. They climbed a tree and stayed there for 22 hours while the crocodile waited below.

But you CAN survive a crocodile attack. Last year Norman Pascoe, a 19-year-old, was saved from a crocodile when his aunt hit it on the nose. Norman's aunt said: 'I hit it and I shouted, 'Help!' The crocodile suddenly opened its mouth and my nephew escaped.'

Cover the text. In pairs, can you remember what these numbers refer to?
7 1000 40 17 24 22 19

d Read the text again and check your answers.

7 6.7 SONG ♫ Wouldn't it be nice
1 SPEAKING
a Complete the definitions with words from the box. Underline the stressed syllable.

decision  decisive  indecisive  decide

1 ______ /də'saɪd/ verb think about two or more possibilities and choose one
2 ______ /də'sɪziə/ noun from 1
3 ______ /də'saɪzəv/ adj good at making decisions
4 ______ /ɪndə'saɪzəv/ adj not good at making decisions

b Interview your partner with the questionnaire. Ask for more information. Which of you is more indecisive?

2 GRAMMAR  may / might
a 68 Cover the dialogue and listen. Who’s indecisive, Roz or Mel? What about?

R  Hi Mel. It’s me... Roz.
M  Hi Roz.
R  Listen Mel. It’s about the party tonight.
M  You’re going, aren’t you?
R  I don’t know. I’m not sure. I might ______ but I might not. I can’t decide.
M  Oh come on. You’ll love it. And you might ______ somebody new.
R  OK. I’ll go then.
M  Good. So what are you going to wear?
R  That’s the other problem. I’m not sure what to wear. I might ______ my new black trousers. Or perhaps the red dress — what do you think?
M  If I were you, I’d wear the red dress.
R  But the red dress may ______ too small for me now...
M  Well, wear the black trousers then.
R  OK. I’ll wear the black trousers.
M  How are you getting there?
R  I might ______ with John... or Ruth... or I may ______ there... I’m not sure yet.
M  OK, I’ll see you there. Bye.
R  Bye

M  Hello?
R  Mel? It’s me again. Roz. Listen, I’ve changed my mind. Sorry. I’m not going to go to the party.

b Listen again and complete the conversation.
c Underline the verb phrases in the dialogue with may / might.

Do we use them for...
1 an obligation OR 2 a possibility

d p.136 Grammar Bank 6C. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

a 6.9 Listen and repeat the may / might phrases from the dialogue. Copy the rhythm. Are may and might stressed?


4 READING

a You’re going to read some tips to help people to make decisions. Before you read, cover the text. In pairs, try to predict what one of the tips will be.

b Quickly look through the article. Is your tip there? Then complete the text with these verbs from the box.

ask compare confuse feel have
make (x2) take use wait

c Read the article again. In pairs, try to decide which tip is the best. Can you think of one other tip?

How to make decisions
When you have to choose between two possibilities:

1. Take your time. The most important thing is not to make a decision in a hurry.

2. ______ a list of the positive and negative points for both options. Then decide which points are most important and ______ the two lists.

3. If you ______ other people for their advice, don’t ask more than one or two. If you ask a lot of people, this will probably ______ you.

4. ______ your imagination to help you. Imagine yourself in both situations. How do you ______? Relaxed or stressed?

5. When you’ve made a decision, ______ a bit before you tell other people, to see how you feel. If you feel comfortable with your decision after an hour, you have probably made the right decision.

6. _______ your time. The most important thing is not to make a decision in a hurry.

5 VOCABULARY noun formation

With some verbs you can make a noun by adding -ion, -sion, or -ation, for example, decide > decision, imagine > imagination

a Complete the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confuse</td>
<td>confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td>decision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>imagination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 6.10 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable in the verbs and nouns.

1 How do you pronounce -sion and -tion?
2 Where is the stress in nouns which finish in -ion?

c Complete the questions with a noun from a.

1. When was the last time you had to make a big ________?
2. What kind of ________ do you often get from the Internet?
3. When was the last time you had an ________ to a wedding?
4. Which party won the last general ________ in your country?
5. Do you belong to any ________ (for example, Greenpeace, etc.)?
6. What do you think is the best form of ________, e-mail, phone, or text-message?

d In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Ask for more information.
1 LISTENING & READING

a. Read this extract from a TV and radio guide.
   1. What kind of programme is it?
   2. Why do people call the programme?
   3. Would you call a programme like this?

b. Listen to three people phoning What's the Problem? and complete the sentences with one word.
   clothes jealousy money
   Barbara's problem is about ____________.
   Kevin's problem is about ____________.
   Catherine's problem is about ____________.

c. Now listen again. What exactly are their problems? Compare what you understood with your partner.

d. Read the e-mails which listeners sent to the What's the problem? website.
   Match two e-mails to each problem. Write Barbara, Kevin, or Catherine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AUTHOR</th>
<th>MESSAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
   | 1      | Hi _______,
   |        | I think you should talk to your girlfriend, not your friend. She might like the way your friend treats her. Perhaps that's why he does it. Why don't you tell her to ask him to stop? Malcolm |
   | 2      | Dear _______,
   |        | If I were you, I wouldn't say anything to your friend. I think you should lock your clothes in a cupboard. She'll soon get the message, and that way you'll stay friends. Maria |
   | 3      | Hi _______,
   |        | You shouldn't be so sensitive. It's not really a problem, it just shows your friend thinks you have good taste. And don't argue with your friend. Women aren't worth it. Darren |
   | 4      | Hi _______,
   |        | I think it depends if your friend is good company or not. If he is then I think you should pay for him. If not, don't tell him where you're going when you go out. Silvia |
   | 5      | Dear _______,
   |        | When your friend gets home tonight I think you should talk to her. Say 'I'm really sorry but I'm a bit obsessive about my things. I don't like other people touching them.' That way she'll stop but she won't get angry or offended. Sandy |
   | 6      | Hi _______,
   |        | You definitely shouldn't pay for him. When the waiter brings the bill, pretend that nobody has money to pay for him. Then he'll have to make an excuse to the waiter and maybe he'll learn that he has to pay for himself. Martyn |

   e. Now read the e-mails again. In pairs, say which advice you think is best for each person and why.
2 GRAMMAR should / shouldn’t
a Highlight examples of should and shouldn’t in the e-mails on p.70.
b Does You should talk to your girlfriend mean…?
1 You have to talk to your girlfriend.
2 I think it’s a good idea if you talk to your girlfriend.
c ➡️ p.136 Grammar Bank 6D. Read the rules and do the exercises.

5 VOCABULARY get
a Look at these sentences from 1. Match the examples of get with meanings A–D.
1 I’m sure you’ll soon get some e-mails with good advice.
2 When your friend gets home tonight you should talk to her.
3 She won’t get angry with you.
4 I get on very well with her.

A receive  B be friendly with C become  D arrive

b ➡️ p.152 Vocabulary Bank get
In pairs, do the get questionnaire.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /o/
a 6.12 Listen and repeat. Write the words.
1 /ʃoʊd/ = should 4 /wʊdnt/ =
2 /ʃʊdnt/ = 5 /kɒd/ =
3 /wʊd/ = 6 /kɒdnt/ =
b 6.13 Listen and repeat these sentences. Copy the rhythm.
1 You should talk to your friend.
2 You shouldn’t be so sensitive.
3 You should lock your clothes in a cupboard.
4 You definitely shouldn’t pay for your friend.
5 What should I do?
6 Should I write to him?

4 WRITING & SPEAKING
a Choose one of the problems and write a short note giving advice.

1 It’s my girlfriend’s birthday next week and I want to give her a surprise with a special present or a special evening somewhere. What should I do?

2 My friend has gone away on holiday for two weeks and I’m looking after her cat. Yesterday I couldn’t find the cat anywhere. My friend is coming home in three days. I’m desperate. Should I phone her now and tell her? What should I do?

3 My best friend wants to borrow some money to help her buy a car. I have the money, and she says she’ll pay me back next year. But I’m worried that it’s not a good idea to lend money to friends. What should I do?

4 I really want to get fit and do more exercise. The problem is I hate going to gyms, and they’re very expensive. And there are no parks near me to go running. What should I do?

b In pairs, read other student’s notes. Decide which problem they refer to. Do you agree with the advice? Why (not)?
6 At the pharmacy

ASKING FOR HELP

6.14 Listen and underline the right phrase.
1 Allie asks the receptionist for some aspirin / painkillers.
2 Allie has a headache / backache.
3 The receptionist gives / doesn't give her medicine.
4 Allie wants / doesn't want a doctor.
5 The pharmacy is / isn't near the hotel.

US English pharmacy
UK English chemist's

ASKING FOR MEDICINE

a 6.15 Cover the dialogue and listen. What does the pharmacist give her? How often does she have to take them? How much are they?

YOU HEAR

Good morning. Can I help you?

What _____ do you have?
Do you have a _____?
Does your back _____?
Are you allergic to any drugs?
No problem. These are _____.
These will make you feel _____.
Two every four hours.
Every four hours. If you don't feel better in _____ hours, you should see a doctor.
$4.75, please.
You're welcome.

YOU SAY

I have a bad cold. Do you have something I can take?
I have a headache and a cough.
No, I don't think so.
No.
I'm allergic to penicillin.
How many do I have to take?
Sorry? How often?
OK, thanks. How much are they?
Thank you.

b Listen again. Complete the YOU HEAR phrases.
aspirin better hurt symptoms
temperature twenty-four

c 6.16 Listen and repeat the YOU SAY phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. A (book open) you're the pharmacist, B (book closed) you're Allie. Swap roles.

SOCIAL ENGLISH talking about the party

a 6.17 Listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Mark apologizes for getting angry last night.
2 Allie thinks Brad is annoying.
3 Brad isn't Allie's type of man.
4 Today is Allie's last day.
5 They're going to have dinner on a boat.

b Complete the USEFUL PHRASES.
Listen again and check.

USEFUL PHRASES

M B ______ you!
M I'm really sorry a ______ (last night).
A I don't m ______. You choose.
M H ______ about (a boat trip around the bay)?
A That s ______ fantastic.
A It's a p ______.
From: Daniel

To: Alessandra

Subject: Exams

Hi Alessandra!

Thanks for your last e-mail. I hope your exams went well. I have some exciting news and I'm writing to 1. _ask_ for your advice.

I 2. _plan_ to go on holiday to Argentina next year. What do you 3. _think_ is the best month for me to come? I can only come for three weeks, so which places do you think I should 4. _recommend_? Do you think I should 5. _hire_ a car or travel around by bus or train?

I'm planning to 6. _spend_ a few days in and around Mendoza, and it would be great if we could 7. _meet_. Can you 8. _recommend_ a good hotel (not too expensive)?

Hope to hear from you soon!

Best wishes,

Daniel

---

a) Read the e-mail and complete it with these verbs.

   _ask_ _hire_ _meet_ _recommend_ _spend_ _think_ _visit_ _want_

b) Imagine that Daniel has written to _you_ about visiting your country. Plan how you're going to answer his questions. Compare with a partner.

c) Look at the USEFUL PHRASES. What are the missing words?

   **USEFUL PHRASES**
   
   1. Thanks _____ your e-mail.
   2. It was great to hear _____ you again.
   3. I'm really happy that you want _____ visit my country.
   4. I think you should come _____ July.
   5. If I were you, I'd travel _____ bus.
   6. I'm looking forward _____ seeing you soon.

   **WRITE** an e-mail to Daniel. Use the phrases in c to help you.

   Paragraph 1: Thank him for his e-mail, etc.
   Paragraph 2: Answer his questions about your country. Give reasons.
   Paragraph 3: Answer his question about your town. Give reasons.

   **CHECK** your e-mail for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).
What do you remember?

GRAMMAR

Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What’s ______ name?
   a yours  b your  c you
1 If we start walking, the bus ______.
   a come  b came  c will come
2 James ______ come to the party if his ex-girlfriend is there.
   a won’t  b don’t  c doesn’t
3 If we ______ queue, the other will move more quickly.
   a change  b will change  c changed
4 What would you do if you ______ a bear?
   a saw  b will see  c see
5 If we had a garden, we ______ a dog.
   a ’ll have  b ’d have  c had
6 I ______ go to the party. I’m not sure.
   a might  b will  c may to
7 The petrol station ______ open today.
   It’s a holiday.
   a may not be  b may not to be  c may to
8 I think you ______ go to the doctor.
   a would  b should to  c should
9 She ______ come home so late.
   a not should  b shouldn’t  c shouldn’t to
10 If I ______ you, I’d talk to your girlfriend.
   a were  b be  c am

VOCABULARY

a confusing verbs

Cross out the wrong verb.
   I don’t watch / look at TV very often.
1 Where did you know / meet your husband?
2 Shh! They’re making / doing an exam.
3 How much money does he earn / win?
4 He was carrying / wearing a black umbrella.
5 You look / look like your sister. You have the same eyes.

b animals

Write the names of the animals.
   It’s a popular pet and it barks.
   dog
   1 It’s a big cat and it lives in Africa.
   2 It has eight legs and it eats flies.
   3 People ride this animal in races.
   4 It’s the largest animal in the sea.
   5 It’s a male cow and it can be dangerous.

C noun formation

Make nouns from these verbs.
   imagine ______
   1 communicate
   2 organize
   3 discuss
   4 translate
   5 decide

PRONUNCIATION

a Underline the word with a different sound

1 rob  lose  borrow  problem
2 we’ll  meet  lion  sheep
3 carry  camel  wasp  happen
4 ask  start  fall  shark
5 zoo  food  you’ll  mouse

b Underline the stressed syllable.

information
   advice  crocodile  decision  happen  translation
   10
CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article and match the questions and answers.

A  if your girlfriend was allergic to the dog you've had for ten years, would you give your dog away?
B  if your boss gave you tickets to the theatre and you forgot to go, would you tell him the truth when he asked?
C  if your young daughter's hamster died, would you buy an identical one or tell her the truth?
D  if a colleague at work told everyone that he was 45 but you knew he was five years older, would you keep his secret?
E  if a celebrity was having a secret affair with your neighbour, would you sell the story to a newspaper?

1 I'd tell everybody the truth, probably in front of him. I think [underline]telling lies[/underline] about your age is ridiculous.
2 No, I'd say that it was the best show I've ever seen! I wouldn't want to offend him. But he would probably guess I was lying.
3 I'm afraid the dog would win! I'd tell my girlfriend that my dog and I had been [underline]together[/underline] for a long time but that she might not be here next week.
4 It would be an interesting story - my neighbour is a 92-year-old, bald Swedish man! No, I wouldn't. I'd just tell my partner.
5 I'd buy another one. It happened to me once when the children's goldfish died. I bought another one but they saw that it was different. I told them it had [underline]put on weight[/underline].

b Read the article again. Guess the meaning of the highlighted words or phrases. Check with the teacher or your dictionary.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

a  6.19 Listen and circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.
1 The man and woman decide to ________.
   a walk  b wait  c get a taxi
2 The woman ________ Deborah.
   a knows  b hasn't met  c wouldn't like to meet
3 Is the woman afraid of mice?
   a Yes  b No  c We don't know
4 Where does the man decide to go?
   a home  b to the pub  c to the cinema
5 What pet does the woman think he should buy?
   a a fish  b a cat  c a hamster

b  6.20 Listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Dave got married five years ago.
2 His wife has just had a baby.
3 Dave's wife doesn't give him much attention.
4 Dave is more tired than his wife.
5 The advice he gets is to help his wife more.

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a  Can you... Yes (√)
   - say three things you'll do if it rains tomorrow
   - say what you would do if you were attacked by a crocodile
   - say what you might do this weekend
   - say what you should or shouldn't do if you have problems sleeping

b  Write second conditional questions.
1 What / you do if / lose / wallet?
2 What / you do if / win the lottery?
3 What / you do if / find some money in the street?
4 What / you do if / have more free time?
5 What / you do if / can speak perfect English?

c  Ask your partner the questions in b. Ask for more information.
We’re all afraid...
Famous people have phobias like the rest of us, and sometimes they seriously affect their lives.

Winona Ryder, American actress
Winona Ryder has been afraid of _______ since 1983. When she was 12 years old she fell into a lake and nearly died. Luckily someone pulled her out, and after a few minutes she came back to life again. It can be a real problem when she’s making a film. For example, in some of the scenes in Alien III, she had to go in a boat and she was terrified.

Rupert Grint, British actor
Rupert Grint has been afraid of _______ since he was a child. In this respect he is like the character he played in the Harry Potter films, Ron Weasley, who is also frightened of them. Rupert had a very hard time in the second Harry Potter film where he and Harry had to fight a giant one (the size of an elephant) with very hairy legs!

Dennis Bergkamp, ex-international footballer
Dennis Bergkamp has been afraid of _______ since 1994. He was on a plane in the USA with the Dutch national team during the World Cup. A journalist said that there was a bomb on the plane (there wasn’t), and everybody started to panic, including Dennis. He decided never to travel by plane again. Because of his fear Bergkamp could not play in many important matches for Holland, Inter Milan, and Arsenal.
3 LISTENING

a  Listen to Scott, a doctor talking about his cat phobia. What happens if he sees a cat?

b  Listen again and answer the questions.
   1. What’s the medical name of his phobia?
   2. How long has he had his phobia?
   3. How did it start?
   4. Does his phobia affect his work?
   5. What treatment is he having?
   6. Does he think his phobia will disappear?

4 PRONUNCIATION /ɪ/ and /aɪ/, sentence stress

a  Put these words in the right column.
   - child children in I’ve like life line
   - live (v) mine minute since win

b  Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

c  Practise saying the sentences.
   I’ve lived here since I was a child.
   I’ve liked wine since I lived in Italy.

d  Listen and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.
   1. lived here          have you lived here
   2. known him          have you known him
   3. been married      have they been married
   4. had his dog        has he had his dog
   How long have you lived here?
   How long have you known him?
   How long have they been married?
   How long has he had his dog?

5 SPEAKING

Ask and answer in pairs.
A ask B six How long …? questions with a verb phrase.
B answer with for or since.
Give more information if you can.
Then swap roles.

How long have you known your oldest friend?
Since we were at primary school together.
1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
a Underline the stressed syllable in the highlighted words below.
   Events in your life
   go to university  fall in love
   be born          get divorced
   go to primary school  have children
   start work       get married
   leave school     go to secondary school
   die             separate
   retire
b ✿ 74 Listen and check. Practise saying the phrases.
c Number the expressions in what you think is a logical order.
   Compare with a partner. Do you agree?

2 READING & SPEAKING
a Look at the film photos. In pairs, answer the questions.
   1 Who directed the films?
   2 Have you seen either of the films? What kind of films are they?
b Read fifteen facts about the lives of the two directors.
   In pairs, decide which eight are about Hitchcock,
   and which seven are about Tarantino. Write H or T.
c A re-read the facts about Hitchcock, and B about Tarantino.
d Work in pairs.
   A (Book closed) in your own words say everything
   you can remember about Hitchcock.
   B (Book open) listen and help. Then swap roles. B Say everything
   you can remember about Tarantino.

3 GRAMMAR present perfect or past simple?
a Answer the questions.
   1 Look at the eight facts about Hitchcock’s life.
      What tense are all the verbs? Why?
   2 Look at the seven facts about Tarantino’s life.
      What three tenses are there? Why?

b ✿ p.138 Grammar Bank 7B. Read the rules and
   do the exercises.
4 SPEAKING

a Think about a member of your family (who is alive), for example a parent, uncle, aunt, or grandparent. Prepare to answer the questions below about their life.

The past
Where / born?
Where / go to school?
What / do after (he/she) left school?
When / start work?
When / get married?
How many children / have?

The present
Where / live now?
How long / live there?
Is he / she married?
How long / be married?
Is he / she retired?
How long has he / she be retired?

b A interview B about their person. Ask for more information. Then swap roles.

5 LISTENING

a Look at the photo of Sofia Coppola and her father. What do they both do?

b You’re going to listen to part of a TV programme about Sofia Coppola. Look at the information below. Before you listen guess what the connection is with her.

I think she directed The Godfather.

No, she was too young.

1 New York 1971
2 The Godfather
3 The Godfather Part III (Mary Corleone)
4 California Institute of Art
5 1999 – The Virgin Suicides
6 Spike Jonze (film director)
7 Lost in Translation (Oscar nomination)

2.5 Now listen and make notes. Compare with a partner.

d In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

Have you seen any of the films in b? Which one(s)? Did you like them?

Have you seen a good film recently? Which one? Who was in it?

What’s the best film you’ve seen this year? Who directed it?

What’s the worst film you’ve seen this year? Who directed it?
1 READING

a Look at the picture. Does it make you think of your school? Why (not)?

b Look at the photos and read the article about Mick Jagger. Do you think he was really a rebel when he was at school? Why (not)?

c Read the text again. In pairs, guess the meaning of the highlighted words.

2 GRAMMAR used to

a Underline six phrases with used to / didn’t use to in the text. Does used to refer to...
   1 the present or the past?
   2 things that happened once or for a long time?

b p.138 Grammar Bank 7C. Read the rules and do the exercises.

A famous rebel – but was he really?

MICK JAGGER went back to his old school recently – for the first time since he left in 1961. He was invited to the school to open the ‘Mick Jagger Performing Arts centre’, a new music and drama department at Dartford Grammar School.

Jagger said that he was ‘honoured’ that the centre was named after him. But in a newspaper interview two days before he told a journalist that in fact he hated school and that he used to be a rebel.

He didn’t use to do the homework – ‘there was far too much’ – and he was continually at war with the teachers. He used to break the rules all the time, especially rules he thought were stupid, about how to wear the school uniform and things like that. Once he even organized a mass protest against ‘appalling’ school dinners. ‘It was probably the greatest contribution to school I ever made,’ he said. Although he made a good start at school, Jagger said his school work deteriorated because of ‘music and girls’.

However, according to one of his old school friends, musician Dick Taylor, this is not true. He says that Mick didn’t use to be a rebel at all – he was quite bright and used to work hard. He also used to do a lot of sport.

When Mick Jagger left school, he had seven O-levels and two A-levels, which at that time were good qualifications – so perhaps Dick’s memory is better than Mick’s...

Adapted from a British newspaper
3 LISTENING
a Look at the photos of Melissa when she was at school and today. How has she changed?

b 76 Listen to her talking about her school days. Was she a rebel or a ‘good girl’ at school? What does she do now?

c Listen again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Melissa is a teenager in the photo.
2 She used to write things on the walls.
3 She didn’t like any of the subjects at school.
4 Her least favourite subject was PE.
5 The PE teacher made them try to do difficult things.
6 She used to break the rules about the school uniform.
7 She wanted to be a doctor.
8 Her parents wanted her to be a teacher.

4 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

\[\text{used to and (didn’t) use to are both pronounced } /\text{ju\hspace{0.1cm}st\hspace{0.1cm}a}/.\]

a 77 Listen and underline the stressed words.
Then listen and repeat.
1 I used to go out a lot.
2 He used to hate school.
3 They didn’t use to be friends.
4 She didn’t use to like him.
5 Did you use to wear glasses?

b 78 Now listen and write six more sentences.

5 VOCABULARY school subjects
a Match the words with the pictures.

1 2 + 2 = 4
2 Art
3 Geography
4 Science
5 Drama
6 Poetry
7 French
8 Spanish
9 Italian
10 English

PE (=physical education)
geography
technology
maths
history
foreign languages (English, etc.)
literature
science (physics, chemistry, and biology)

b 79 Listen and practise saying the words.

c Think about when you were 11 or 12 years old. Talk about each subject with one of the expressions below. Say why.
I used / didn’t use to like ______.

I didn’t use to like maths. I was really bad at it.

6 SPEAKING
a Think about when you were 11 or 12. Were these things true or false about you? Why?

I used to be a rebel.
I used to work hard.
I used to like all the teachers.
I used to hate school.
I used to do a lot of sport.
I used to wear glasses.
I used to wear a uniform.
I used to have longer hair.

b Work in groups of three.
A tell B and C about how you used to be. B and C listen and ask for more information. Then swap roles. Did you have anything in common?

I didn’t use to be a rebel. I was a good boy.

7 7.10 SONG ♫ it’s all over now
The mothers of invention

1 LISTENING

a Look at the photos. Five of these things were invented by women. In pairs, decide which five you think they are.

b Now listen to a radio programme about inventions. Were you right? Complete the sentences with the invention.

1 ________ was invented by Josephine Cochrane in 1886.
2 ________ were invented by Mary Anderson in 1903.
3 ________ were invented by Marion Donovan in 1950.
4 ________ was invented by Bette Nesmith Graham in 1956.
5 ________ was invented by Stephanie Kwolek in 1966.

c Listen again and answer the questions.

1 What happened after Josephine Cochrane’s dinner parties?
2 What was the problem with cars in 1903 when it rained or snowed?
3 How many disposable nappies are used every day?
4 What was Bette Nesmith Graham’s job?
5 What was special about the material Stephanie Kwolek invented?

d Which of the five inventions do you think was the best?

2 GRAMMAR passive

a Make five true sentences using the words in the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The dishwasher</th>
<th>is called</th>
<th>Tippex today.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disposable nappies</td>
<td>was invented</td>
<td>by Marion Donovan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 55 million nappies</td>
<td>are protected</td>
<td>every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs Graham’s invention</td>
<td>were invented</td>
<td>by the bullet-proof vest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policemen all over the world</td>
<td>are used</td>
<td>by an American woman.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dishwasher was invented by an American woman.

b Look at these two sentences and answer the questions.

a An American woman invented the dishwasher.
b The dishwasher was invented by an American woman.

1 Do the sentences have the same meaning?
2 Do the sentences have the same emphasis?
3 Which sentence is in the passive?

c p.138 Grammar Bank 7D. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 READING & VOCABULARY

a Complete the text below with the correct verb in the right form.

base create design (x2) discover invent name use write

Did you know...?

Text-messaging was 1 invented by the Finnish company Nokia. They wanted to help Finnish teenagers, who were very shy. They found it easier to text their friends than to phone them.

The first bikini was 2 invented by two Frenchmen. It was 3 designed after Bikini Atoll, the island where the atomic bomb was first tested. The Frenchmen thought that the bikini would have a similar effect on men as a bomb exploding.

Light bulbs are 4 designed specially to last only a certain number of hours. It would be possible to make light bulbs that lasted forever, but then the manufacturers wouldn’t make so much money.

The first Harry Potter book was 5 written in a café in Edinburgh. JK Rowling was unemployed, and she didn’t have enough money to pay for heating, so she wrote it in the café where it was warmer.

Although penicillin was 6 discovered by Alexander Fleming, he didn’t know how to make it into a medicine. It was first made into a medicine ten years later, by an Australian scientist Howard Florey.

Spiders were 7 named as a cure for toothache in the 17th century. They were first made into a paste, and then put on the bad tooth.

Sherlock Holmes, the great detective was 8 named by writer Arthur Conan Doyle. Holmes was 9 named on a real person – Doyle’s teacher at medical school, who was famous for saying to his students, ‘What can you tell me by just observing the patient?’

b Read the facts again. In pairs, say which one is the most surprising.

4 PRONUNCIATION -ed, sentence stress

a How is the -ed pronounced in these past participles? Put them in the right column.

based designed directed discovered invented
named painted produced used

b 2.12 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable in each multi-syllable verb.

c 2.13 Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm. Which words are stressed?

1 The film was based on a true story.
2 These clothes were designed by Armani.
3 This wine is produced near here.
4 My sister was named after our grandmother.
5 These pictures were painted by my aunt.
6 Garlic is used a lot in French cooking.

5 SPEAKING

Communication Passives quiz A p.111 B p.115. Make sentences for your partner to decide if they are true or false.
A boat trip

**HOW TO GET THERE**

1. Allie’s feeling worse.
2. Mark thinks Allie might get cold.
3. They’re going to get a taxi to the bay.
4. Allie wants to be at the hotel again at 1.00 p.m.
5. She’s expecting an important visitor.

**BUYING TICKETS**

a. Cover the dialogue and listen. Complete the sentences.

The next boat leaves at ___ a.m. The trip takes ___ hour(s) and costs ___.

**YOU SAY**

Good morning.

What time does the next boat leave?

How long does it take?

Where exactly does the boat go?

Can we get anything to eat or drink on the boat?

Can I have two tickets, please?

How much is that?

Here you are.

Thank you.

**YOU HEAR**

Good morning, sir.

At 10.00.

___ an hour.

It goes ___ the bridge, ___ Angel Island and ___ Alcatraz, and then ___ here.

Yes, ma’am, there’s a ___ bar.

Sure. Two ___.

That’s $40.

Thank you, sir.

b. Listen again and complete the **YOU HEAR** phrases.

c. **Social English** on the boat

**7.17** Listen and answer the questions.

1. Does Allie prefer San Francisco to London?
2. Does she think she could live there? Why (not)?
3. What did the building on Alcatraz use to be?
4. What’s the weather like?
5. What does Mark ask the boatman to do?

**USEFUL PHRASES**

M What do you t___ of (San Francisco)?
A Why do you a___?
M Oh, no reason. I j____ wondered.
A I’m really l____ forward to it.
M C____ you take a photo of us, please?
B Are you r____?
Describing a building

1. The most beautiful building in my town is the cathedral (the Duomo). It is in the centre of Milan, in the Piazza del Duomo.

2. Nobody knows who it was built by, but people think it was an architect from northern Europe. Construction began in 1386, but the building wasn’t completed for another 500 years.

3. It is one of the largest cathedrals in the world and it has 135 spires and 3,400 statues. On top of the Duomo there is a gold statue of the Madonna which watches over the city. The statue is called the ‘Madonnina’, or the little Madonna, although it is four metres tall.

4. Inside the Duomo it is quite dark. There are beautiful big windows, and a lot of interesting statues and monuments. In the chapel of St Fina there are some wonderful frescoes by Ghirlandaio.

5. One of the best things you can do in Milan is to go up to the roof of the Duomo. The view is fantastic – on a clear day you can see the Italian Alps. You can get the lift, or if you are feeling energetic you can walk up the 250 steps.

6. It is free to go in, but you must dress appropriately.

---
a. Read the description and complete it with words from the box.

- cathedral
- completed
- designed
- roof steps
- statue
- view
- windows

b. Match the questions with paragraphs 1–6.

Is there a view from the building? [ ]
Describe the building outside. [ ]
Describe the building inside. [ ]
How much does it cost to go in? [ ]
What’s the most beautiful building in your town? Where is it? [ ]
Who was it designed by? When was it built? [ ]

c. Find one spelling mistake in each paragraph and correct it.

WRITE a description of a building in your town. Answer the questions in b in the right order.

CHECK your description for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).
What do you remember?

GRAMMAR
Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What’s ______ name?
  a yours    b your    c you

1 I ______ in this house since I was a child.
  a live
  b ‘m living
  c ‘ve lived

2 My father’s had his car ______.
  a for two years
  b since two years
  c two years ago

3 How long ______ afraid of flying?
  a are you
  b have you been
  c you have been

4 Tom Cruise and Nicole Kidman ______ married for ten years, but divorced in 2001.
  a are
  b have been
  c were

5 When ______?
  a did Alfred Hitchcock die
  b is Alfred Hitchcock dead
  c has Alfred Hitchcock died

6 My brother ______ glasses.
  a used to wear
  b use to wear
  c used to wearing

7 I ______ like vegetables when I was a child.
  a don’t use to
  b didn’t use to
  c didn’t used to

8 Radium ______ discovered by Pierre and Marie Curie.
  a is
  b were
  c was

9 The Lord of the Rings ______ by J.R.R.Tolkien.
  a wrote
  b was wrote
  c was written

10 Paper ______ the Chinese.
  a was invented by
  b invented for
  c was invented for

VOCABULARY
a time expressions
Complete the sentences with for or since.
I’ve lived here ______ 1998.
1 I’ve had this pen ______ I was a child.
2 He’s been married ______ last June.
3 They’ve known each other ______ a long time.
4 She’s studied French literature ______ three years.
5 You’ve worn that sweater every day ______ Christmas!

b verb phrases
Complete the phrases with a verb.

be    get    fall    have    leave    retire

______ have children
1 ______ in love
2 ______ school/university
3 ______ married/divorced
4 ______ when you’re 65
5 ______ born

c school subjects
Complete the sentences with a school subject.
If you study ______ you learn to use computers.
1 If you study ______ you learn about what happened in the past.
2 If you study ______ you learn about countries, mountains, rivers, etc.
3 If you study ______ you learn to add, multiply, etc.
4 If you study ______ you learn physics and chemistry.
5 If you study ______ you learn about plants and animals.

PRONUNCIATION
a Underline the word with a different sound.

1 since    time    child    life

2 school    food    cartoon    book

3 use    ugly    university    uniform

4 scene    science    scarf    since

5 change    teacher    school    children

b Underline the stressed syllable.

information

afraid    favourite    directed    discovered    invented
CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a. Read the article quickly. What is surprising about Lady Morton?

The world’s most experienced driver?

One of Scotland’s most active centenarians, Lady Morton, has been a driver for nearly 80 years, although she has never taken a driving test. But last week she had her first ever accident – she hit a traffic island when she took her new car for a drive in Edinburgh.

Lady Morton, who celebrated her 100th birthday in July, was given the Nissan Micra as a surprise present. Yesterday she talked about the accident. ‘I wasn’t going fast, but I hit a traffic island. I couldn’t see it, because it had no lights, which I think is ridiculous. But I am all right and luckily my car wasn’t badly damaged.’

In spite of the accident, she is not planning to stop driving. ‘Some people are just born to drive, and I think I am one of them. I’ve never taken a test, but I’ve been a good driver since the first time I got in a car. I’m musical, so I listen to the sound of the car to know when to change gear. Some people are very rude – they ask me if I’m still driving at my age. It really annoys me.’

Lady Morton bought her first car in 1927. The main change she has noticed since then is the traffic. ‘It’s appalling. I don’t mind it, because I am experienced, but I feel very sorry for beginners.’

b. Tick (✓) the things the article says.
1. Lady Morton has had a lot of accidents.
2. She bought a Nissan Micra recently.
3. She couldn’t see the traffic island because she didn’t have her lights on.
4. She wasn’t badly hurt.
5. After her latest accident she needs a new car.
6. She thinks she’s a safe driver.
7. The amount of traffic isn’t a problem for her.

c. Read the article again. Guess the meaning of the highlighted words or phrases. Check with the teacher or your dictionary.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

a. Listen. Circle a, b, or c.
1. How long has Matt lived in Glasgow?
   a. Since he was at university. 
   b. For six months. 
   c. For two years.
2. John’s sister ______ married.
   a. is 
   b. is going to get 
   c. was
3. He started running ______.
   a. a few years ago 
   b. at school 
   c. a few days ago
4. What’s her favourite subject?
   a. Geography 
   b. Literature 
   c. Maths
5. When was the White Tower completed?
   a. In the 17th century. 
   b. In 1068. 
   c. In 1285.

b. Listen and complete the table with a number or one word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ground floor:</th>
<th>1 a collection of ________ by Graham Richmond.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First floor:</td>
<td>2 children’s ________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entrance hall:</td>
<td>3 the museum ________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price of guidebook:</td>
<td>4 ________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Museum closes at:</td>
<td>5 ________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a. Can you...? Yes (✓)
   - say how long you have lived in your town, worked in your job, etc.
   - talk about the life of an old person in your family
   - say three things you used to do when you were at (primary) school
   - describe a famous building in your town

b. Complete the questions with an auxiliary verb.
1. How long ______ you been in this class?
2. Where ______ your grandparents born?
3. What TV programmes ______ you use to watch when you were a child?
4. What’s the oldest building in your town? When ______ it built?

c. Ask your partner the questions in b. Ask for more information.
Most people say that Saturdays or Sundays are their favourite days of the week – but not everybody. For some people weekends are not much fun...

**I hate weekends!**

Kirsten from Germany is a __________

‘I must admit that for me now the weekends are more tiring than the week. During the week I have 1 some ________ to help me, but at the weekends we’re on our own. My husband’s always exhausted from his job and wants to relax, but 2 no ________ can relax with two small kids around. Our flat isn’t very big so there’s 3 no ________ you can go to have some peace and quiet. Before we had children I used to work too and weekends were perfect. We had 4 no ________ to do except enjoy ourselves. Now I’m really happy when it’s Monday morning.’

Steve from the UK is a __________

‘My weekend is usually quite stressful and more stressful than during the week. We’re playing at home I can’t go out on Friday night. All my friends know that, so 5 no ________ invites me out on a Friday. I have 6 some ________ light to eat, and watch TV, and go to bed early. Very boring! On Saturday morning I usually relax and prepare myself mentally, as our home matches are usually at 3.00 in the afternoon. What I do on Saturday night depends on whether we win or lose. If we win, I have to go out with the team to celebrate. If we lose, we’re too depressed to go 7 any _________. When we play away, the weekend doesn’t exist. We travel 8 some ________, play, and then travel back again. I look forward to having a weekend just for me.’

**1 READING**

a. Is the weekend your favourite part of the week? Why (not)?

b. Read the article. In pairs, guess what the three people do.

c. Listen and check.

d. Complete the sentences with the Marco, Kirsten, or Steve.

1. ________ always gets home late on Saturdays.
2. ________ goes to bed early on Friday night.
3. ________ usually spends the weekend with the family.
4. ________ sometimes goes out on Saturday night.
5. ________ used to love the weekend.
6. ________ prefers Wednesdays to Saturdays.

e. Read the texts again. Complete the words 1—12 with -thing, -body, or -where.
2 GRAMMAR  something, anything, nothing, etc.
  a Look again at 1–12 in the text. Complete the rules with things, places, and people.
Use something, anything, and nothing for ________.
Use somebody, anybody, and nobody for ________.
Use somewhere, anywhere, and nowhere for ________.

b p.140 Grammar Bank 8A. Read the rules and do the exercises.

3 PRONUNCIATION  /ɛ/, /əʊ/, /ʌ/
  a What are sounds 1–3?

b What sound do the pink letters make in each sentence? Write 1, 2, or 3.
1 Nobody knows where he goes. □
2 Somebody’s coming to lunch. □
3 I never said anything. □
4 I’ve done nothing since Sunday. □
5 Don’t tell anybody about the message. □
6 There’s nowhere to go except home. □

b Listen and check your answers. Practise saying the sentences.

4 VOCABULARY  adjectives ending -ed and -ing
  a Look at the two sentences from the article.
What’s the difference between tired and tiring?
I’m so tired that I don’t want to see anybody.
Weekends are more tiring than week days.

b Look at the adjectives in bold in these sentences. How do you pronounce them?
1 Friday night is bored / boring. I never go out.
2 I’m bored / boring with my job. It’s always the same.
3 If we lose we feel depressed / depressing.
4 My team never win. It’s depressed / depressing.
5 Reading is very relaxed / relaxing.
6 I feel very relaxed / relaxing at the weekend.
7 His latest film is really interesting / interested.
8 I’m not very interesting / interested in sport.
9 I’m very excited / exciting about my holiday.
10 It was a really excited / exciting match.

c Cross out the wrong word.

b In pairs, use the pictures 1–8 to re-tell the story.
How old are you? How old is your body? The answer to these two questions isn't always the same. Our body age can be much younger or much older than our calendar age (even eighteen years different!). We can now calculate our body age by answering questions about the way we live. If our body age is older than our calendar age, we should change our lifestyle.

**EXERCISE**
I know I'm too fat because I don't do enough exercise. I spend too much time sitting in studios. All I do is play squash, but I don't play very often—about once a month. I would go to a gym if I had more time.

**DIET**
I eat quite a lot of fresh food and a lot of fruit, but I probably eat too much meat. My girlfriend says I don't drink enough water. I drink a little alcohol—just a glass of red wine with my dinner. But I don't drink any beer. I drink a lot of coffee. It goes with the job.

**LIFESTYLE**
Like everybody I'm too busy! There aren't enough hours in the day. I love my job but I work too much (sometimes I spend 14 hours a day in the studio—that's too many). I often feel a bit tense and irritable. I smoke a few cigarettes when I go out, but I'm not a regular smoker. I only wear sunscreen when I go to the beach. My skin is quite dark so I don't think it's a problem.

**PERSONALITY**
I'm quite pessimistic. I always think that things will go wrong—and they usually do, especially at work.

**SOCIAL LIFE**
I don't have much free time but I have a few close friends and I try to see them regularly. If I'm too busy then I phone them.

**DOCTOR'S VERDICT:**
Tariq should do more exercise, for example he could walk to work. This would help him to control his stress. His diet is quite healthy but he should drink more water and less coffee. He must give up smoking. Although his skin is quite dark he should wear sunscreen all year round, even in winter. And he should try to be more positive.

---

1 READING
a. Read the introduction to the article and answer the questions.
   1. Is our body age the same as our calendar age?
   2. How can we calculate our body age?
   3. What should we do if our body age is older than our calendar age?

b. Look at the photo of Tariq and read about him. Underline the things he does that are good. Circle the things he does that are bad. Compare with a partner.

c. Cover the Doctor's verdict. What do you think he should do?

d. Now read the Doctor's verdict. Was the advice the same as yours? What do you think his body age is?

2 GRAMMAR quantifiers, too, not enough
a. Can you remember how to use much, many, in pairs, choose the correct word or phrase each sentence. Say why the other one is wrong.
   1. How much / many coffee do you drink?
   2. I don't eat much / many vegetables.
   3. I eat a lot of / many bread.
   4. I smoke a lot / a lot of.
   5. A How much tea do you drink?  
      B Any / None. I don't like it.

b. Match the phrases 1–6 with the meanings A–G.
   1. I drink too much coffee.  
      A I don't drink enough.
   2. I'm too fat.  
      B I need to do more exercise.
   3. I work too many hours.  
      C I have two or three friends.
   4. I don't do enough exercise.  
      D I work more than I want.
   5. I drink a little alcohol.  
      E I should be a little thinner.
   6. I have a few close friends.  
      F I drink more than I should.

   p.140 Grammar Bank 8B. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/ /ʊə/ /əʊ/ /eɪ/ /e/ linking
a Cross out the word with a different pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enough</th>
<th>much</th>
<th>none</th>
<th>busy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>few</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>too</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite</td>
<td>diet</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 8.4 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

Remember! When people speak quickly they don’t separate the words.

c 8.5 Listen and write the six sentences.

d Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

4 SPEAKING

a Read the questionnaire and circle your answers.

How much sport or exercise do you do?

A lot.

What do you do?

I go to the gym three times a week.

c Communication Body age p.111. Work out your body age.

d Look at your partner’s answers. Give him/her some good advice.

I think you should do more exercise. For example...

What’s your body age?

Do our quiz and find out

EXERCISE

1 How much do you walk a day?
   a a lot   b not much   c very little

2 How much sport and exercise do you do a week?
   a a lot   b a little   c none

DIET

3 How much fast food (processed and pre-prepared) do you eat?
   a I eat too much.   b I eat quite a lot.   c I don’t eat much.
   d I don’t eat any.

4 How many portions of fruit and vegetables do you eat per day?
   a only a few   b quite a lot   c a lot

5 How much water do you drink?
   a a lot   b quite a lot   c a little

6 What’s your worst diet habit?
   a I eat too much fat.   b I eat (or drink) too many sweet things.
   c I eat (or drink) too much.   d none of these

LIFESTYLE

7 How many cigarettes do you smoke a day?
   a none   b a few   c a lot

8 How would you describe yourself mentally?
   a I am a very positive person.   b I am not positive enough.
   c I’m quite pessimistic.

9 How would you describe your stress level?
   a I am too stressed.   b I am stressed, but it’s under control.
   c I am quite relaxed.

10 How often do you wear sunscreen?
   a all year   b only when I’m on holiday   c when it’s sunny

SOCIAL LIFE

11 How many close friends do you see regularly?
   a a lot   b quite a lot   c a few   d not many / none

12 How much time do you have for yourself?
   a none   b not enough   c quite a lot
3 PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/ /ʊ/ /ə/ /e/ linking
a Cross out the word with a different pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enough</th>
<th>much</th>
<th>none</th>
<th>busy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>few</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>too</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite</td>
<td>diet</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 8.4 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

A Remember! When people speak quickly they don’t separate the words.

c 8.5 Listen and write the six sentences.

d Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

4 SPEAKING
a Read the questionnaire and circle your answers.

How much sport or exercise do you do?

A lot.

What do you do?

I go to the gym three times a week.

Communication Body age p.111. Work out your body age.

c d Look at your partner’s answers. Give him / her some good advice.

I think you should do more exercise. For example…

EXERCISE

1 How much do you walk a day?
   a a lot  b not much  c very little

2 How much sport and exercise do you do a week?
   a a lot  b a little  c none

DIET

3 How much fast food (processed and pre-prepared) do you eat?
   a I eat too much  b I eat quite a lot  c I don’t eat much  d I don’t eat any.

4 How many portions of fruit and vegetables do you eat per day?
   a only a few  b quite a lot  c a lot

5 How much water do you drink?
   a a lot  b quite a lot  c a little

6 What’s your worst diet habit?
   a I eat too much fat  b I eat (or drink) too many sweet things  c I eat (or drink) too much  d none of these

LIFESTYLE

7 How many cigarettes do you smoke a day?
   a none  b a few  c a lot

8 How would you describe yourself mentally?
   a I am a very positive person  b I am not positive enough  c I’m quite pessimistic

9 How would you describe your stress level?
   a I am too stressed  b I am stressed, but it’s under control  c I am quite relaxed

10 How often do you wear sunscreen?
    a all year  b only when I’m on holiday  c when it’s sunny

SOCIAL LIFE

11 How many close friends do you see regularly?
   a a lot  b quite a lot  c a few  d not many / none

12 How much time do you have for yourself?
   a none  b not enough  c quite a lot
Waking up is hard to do

1 VOCABULARY phrasal verbs
   a. Match the questions 1–7 with the pictures A–G.

1. What time do you wake up in the morning?
2. Do you use an alarm clock to wake up?
3. Do you turn off the alarm clock immediately?
4. What’s the first thing you turn on after you wake up?
5. Do you get up immediately after you wake up?
6. How do you feel when you first get up?
7. When you get dressed, what’s the last thing you put on?

b. Cover the questions and look at the pictures. Try to remember the questions.
c. In pairs, use the pictures to ask and answer the questions.

2 GRAMMAR word order of phrasal verbs
   a. Look at the pictures 1–3 and underline the object of the phrasal verb in each sentence.

   Complete the rules about separable phrasal verbs with noun or pronoun.

1. If the object of a phrasal verb is a _____, you can put it after the verb + up, on, etc.
   OR between the verb and up, on, etc.
2. If the object of a phrasal verb is a _____, you must put it between the verb and up, on, etc.

   p.140 Grammar Bank 8C. Read the rules and do the exercises.
d. Match the sentences. Then cover the sentences on the right. Try to remember them.

   1. Your mobile’s ringing.  
   2. This is an important rule.  
   3. I can’t hear the music.  
   4. If you don’t know what the words mean,  
   5. This is an immigration form.  
   6. Coffee is bad for you.  
   7. Your clothes are on the floor.  
   8. That’s rubbish.

   A You need to give it up.  
   B Put them away.  
   C Turn it up.  
   D Throw it away.  
   E Turn it off.  
   F Please fill it in.  
   G Write it down.  
   H Look them up.
3 READING
a. Do you know what these scientific words and expressions mean?
   - gene
   - DNA
   - your 'body clock'
   - research

b. Read the article about morning and evening people.
   Choose a, b, or c.

1. Scientists say that if we are bad at getting up in the morning, this is because
   a. we are born like that.
   b. we go to bed too late.
   c. we drink too much coffee.

2. Researchers asked people questions about
   a. the way they lived.
   b. science.
   c. sport and exercise.

3. They discovered that people who have a short 'clock' gene
   a. are better in the morning than in the evening.
   b. get tired very early.
   c. are better in the evening than in the morning.

4. They recommend that people who have a long 'clock' gene
   a. should only work in the afternoon and evening.
   b. should start work early and finish early.
   c. should start work late and finish late.

---

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING
a. Listen to David being interviewed by a researcher. Is he a morning or evening person?
b. Listen again and write down David's answers.

---

5 PRONUNCIATION /g/ and /dʒ/
a. How is the letter g pronounced in these words? Put five words in each column.
   - gene
   - get
   - go
   - change
   - energetic

---

6 SONG 🎵 Say a little prayer
   - 8.8 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.
   - 8.7 Listen and check. Practise saying the sentences.

1. She gets up early to go to the gym.
2. George and Greta are good at German.
3. I'm allergic to mornings. It's in my genes.
4. I generally feel hungry and energetic.

---

Are you allergic to mornings?

Are you somebody who can't wake up in the morning? Do you need two cups of coffee before you can start a new day? Do you feel awful when you first wake up? Scientists say it's all because of our genes. How did they find this out? Researchers from the University of Surrey interviewed 500 people. They asked them questions about their lifestyle, for example what time of day they preferred to do exercise and how difficult they found it to wake up in the morning. Scientists then compared their answers to the people's DNA.

They discovered that we all have a 'clock' gene, also called a Period 3 gene. This gene can be long or short. People who have the long gene are usually people who are very good in the morning, but who get tired quite early at night. People who have the short gene are usually people who are more active at night but who have problems waking up early in the morning. How does it help us to know if we have the long or short gene? Scientists say that, if possible, we should try to change our working hours to fit our 'body clock'. If you are a 'morning person' then you could start work early and finish early. But if you are bad in the mornings, then it might be better to start work in the afternoon and work until late at night. So maybe, instead of nine to five it should be seven to three or twelve to eight.
I LISTENING

a) Look at the photos and describe the two men.

b) Read about the two men and answer the questions.
   1. Who are Jim Springer and Jim Lewis?
   2. Why didn’t they know each other?
   3. When did they meet?

Some years ago, two identical twins were born in Minnesota USA. They were adopted by two different families. The two new families both called their babies Jim. Jim Springer never knew that Jim Lewis existed. But when they were 40 years old they met for the first time and they had a conversation something like this...

2 GRAMMAR so, neither + auxiliaries

a) Look at the dialogue again. Write one phrase that the twins use...
   when they have something + in common.
   when they have something – in common.

b) p.140 Grammar Bank 8D. Read the rules and do the exercises.
3 READING & VOCABULARY
a Read the text and answer the questions.
1 Who reunited the two Jims?
2 What did Dr Bouchard want to find out?
3 What was he very surprised by?
4 What are their sons and their dogs called?
5 What do they both do for their wives?
6 What does Dr Bouchard believe, as a result of the case of the two Jims?

b Complete the phrases with these words.

as both like neither so similar

Similarities
1 Jim Springer looks exactly ________ Jim Lewis.
2 Jim Springer’s son has the same name ________ Jim Lewis’s son.
3 The two Jims ________ have dogs.
4 Jim Springer likes baseball and ________ does Jim Lewis.
5 Jim Lewis doesn’t like basketball and ________ does Jim Springer.
6 Dr Bouchard didn’t expect them to be so ________ to each other.

c Complete the sentences about you and your family. Tell your partner.

1 I have the same colour eyes as my ________.
2 I look like my ________.
3 My personality is quite similar to my ________’s.
4 My ________ and I both like ________.
5 I like ________ and so does my ________.
6 I don’t like ________ and neither does my ________.

4 PRONUNCIATION  sounds, sentence stress

a The same or different? Circle the word with a different sound in each group.
1 so no do
2 they neither both
twice twins
4 identical incredible immediately
go good wood
6 now know how
7 speak great each
8 beer free weekend

b 8.10 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

c 8.11 Listen and repeat the dialogues. Underline the stressed words.

1 A I like tea. B So do I.
2 A I’m tired. B So am I.
3 A I don’t smoke. B Neither do I.
4 A I’m not hungry. B Neither am I.

d 8.12 Listen and respond. Say you’re the same. Use So ______ I / Neither ______ I.

5 SPEAKING

a Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

ME 
WHO ELSE?
I love ________ (a kind of music)
I don’t like ________ (a TV programme)
I’m ________ (star sign)
I’m not very good at ________ (a subject)
I’m going to ________ this weekend. (an activity)
I have to ________ every day. (an obligation)
I don’t eat ________ (a kind of food)
I’m not very ________ (adjective of personality)

b Move around the class saying your sentences. For each sentence try to find someone like you, and write down their name. Respond to other people’s sentences. Say So do I am I or Neither do I am I if you are like them.

I love classical music. ________
8 On the phone

CHECKING OUT

8.13 Listen to Allie talking to the receptionist. Answer the questions.
1 When is she leaving the hotel?
2 When does she want to pay?
3 What time is her flight?
4 What time does she have to be at the airport?
5 What is the message for her?

MAKING PHONE CALLS

8.14 Cover the dialogue and listen. Who does Allie want to speak to? What happens the first time she calls? Is the news good or bad? What is it?

YOU HEAR

Hello.
Sorry, you’ve got the ______ number.
MTC New York. How can I help you?
Just a moment. I’ll ______ you ______.
No, I’m sorry. She’s not at her desk right now.
Sure.

YOU SAY

Hello. Is that MTC?
Oh sorry.
Hello. Can I speak to Lisa Formosa, please?
Hi, is that Lisa?
Can I leave a message, please?
Tell her Allie Gray called. I’ll call back in five minutes.

8.15 Listen and repeat the YOU HEAR phrases. Copy the rhythm.

SOlcial ENGLISH saying goodbye?

8.16 Listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Mark thinks that their relationship has a future.
2 She thinks it’s a problem that Mark is very different from her.
3 Mark tells Allie he’s going to move to another company.
4 Allie is very surprised.
5 Allie is going to be Mark’s wife.

USEFUL PHRASES

A Thanks for e______.
M C______! To us.
A What do you m______?
M I______ that amazing?
M What’s the m______?
M I don’t b______ it.
a) Read the article and complete it with these words.

above all although another but general however secondly which who

The weekend

The good side
For me the first good thing about the weekend is that I don't have to go to work. I like my job, 1 but I have to spend all day inside, in an office, and I'm a person who loves being outside. 3 A good thing is that I don't have to get up early. During the week I have to get up at half past six every day. It's not too bad in the summer but I hate it in the winter when it's dark in the morning. But 4 secondly, I like the weekend because I have time to do all the things I really enjoy doing, like listening to music, reading, or going out with friends.

The bad side
5 However, there are some things I don't like about the weekend. Firstly, I have to go shopping on Saturday morning, and the supermarket is always crowded. 6 Secondly, on Sundays we always have lunch with my husband's family. 7 However, my mother-in-law is a good cook and her food is delicious, I don't usually have a good time. The family always argue and we end up watching TV, 8 but I think is boring.

But in 9 secondly I love the weekend – I often get a bit depressed on Sunday afternoon when I know that the weekend is nearly over.

b) Read the article again. Now cover it and, from memory, mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. She works outside.
2. She has to get up early during the week.
3. She enjoys shopping on Saturdays.
4. Her husband always makes lunch on Sundays.
5. She doesn't like watching TV.

What do you think of the weekend? WRITE two paragraphs.

Paragraph 1 The good side
For me the best thing about the weekend is...

Paragraph 2 The bad side
However, there are some things I don't like. For example, ...

Final sentence Do you love it or hate it?
But in general, ...

CHECK your article for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).
8 What do you remember?

GRAMMAR

Circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.

What’s _____ name?

- yours  b your  c you

1 A What did you do this weekend?
B _____

- a Nothing.
- b Nobody.
- c Anything.

2 We didn’t go _____ on Sunday.
- a somewhere
- b anywhere
- c nowhere

3 She spoke to _____ in the office.
- a anybody
- b somebody
- c nobody

4 He eats _____ crisps and chips.
- a too
- b too much
- c too many

5 I can’t go. I’m _____ busy.
- a enough
- b too
- c too much

6 You don’t drink _____.
- a water enough
- b enough water
- c a few water

7 Here are your shoes. Put _____.
- a on them
- b them on
- c it on

8 I can’t find my keys. Can you help me _____?
- a look them for
- b look for them
- c for them look

9 A My father loves jazz.
B _____

- a So I do.
- b So am I.
- c So do I.

10 A I didn’t go to university.
B _____

- a Neither do I.
- b Neither did I.
- c Neither I did.

VOCABULARY

a adjectives ending -ed and -ing

Complete the sentences with an adjective.

The film was very exciting.

1 We had a very _____ holiday – we just lay in the sun.
2 I only got three hours’ sleep – I’m really _____.
3 I saw a really _____ TV programme last night.
4 She failed all her exams, so she feels a bit d _____.
5 My job’s very b _____ – I have to do all the photocopying.

b health and lifestyle verbs

Complete the sentences with a verb.

She _____ drinks a lot of coffee.

1 I don’t _____ enough exercise.
2 You should _____ enough exercise if you’re going to the beach.
3 He _____ too many biscuits.
4 I _____ my friends every weekend.
5 You should _____ smoking, it’s a terrible habit.

c phrasal verbs

Complete the sentences with a verb.

I _____ get up at 7.00.

get look (x2) put turn wake

1 Please _____ off the TV when you go to bed.
2 You should _____ up new words in a dictionary.
3 _____ up. It’s 7.00.
4 _____ on a coat. It’s cold.
5 I have to _____ after my little brother today.

PRONUNCIATION

a Underline the word with a different sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>something</th>
<th>nobody</th>
<th>nothing</th>
<th>somebody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>nobody</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>energetic</td>
<td>investigate</td>
<td>get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>neither</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>great</td>
<td>each</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Underline the stressed syllable.

information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>relax</th>
<th>diet</th>
<th>enough</th>
<th>identical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Born to run

The Ethiopian runner, Haile Gebreselassie, the ‘Emperor’, is probably the greatest athlete of all time. He has won two Olympic titles, seven world titles and has broken numerous world records at 5,000 and 10,000 metres. A Sunday Times journalist went to interview him at his home in Addis Ababa.

Haile’s routine has not changed since he became an athlete. Every morning he gets up at 5:45 and runs for two hours. He has a nap after lunch and then goes out running again.

Haile was brought up in a very poor family. Although today he is a multi-millionaire he has never been comfortable with being a rich man in such a poor country. ‘The thing that really offends me,’ he says, ‘is that the most important value in the 21st century is how much money you have.

In the future, when he retires from athletics, Haile may go into politics. ‘I want to do something to help the people of Ethiopia. I have travelled to many countries. I have experience and I want to share that experience.’ What Haile can’t understand is why Europe is so rich and Ethiopia so poor. ‘I was in Germany a week ago and it was freezing! Minus five. We have a much better climate. But we don’t have enough water and we don’t have enough food and there are too many people.

As we drive through the city in his ten-year-old Mercedes everybody recognizes him and shouts his name. A lorry carrying soldiers waits to let us pass. ‘Even the army are your fans,’ I say. ‘No,’ replies Haile. ‘That was because there is a white man sitting in the front seat of the car with me.’

a  Read the article and mark the sentences T (true), F (false), or DS (doesn’t say).
1. Haile Gebreselassie is a long-distance runner.
2. He runs twice a day.
3. He enjoys being rich.
4. His family are also very rich.
5. He can’t understand why Europe is richer than his country.
6. The soldiers stop because Haile is famous.

b  Find a word or phrase in the article which means:
1. a short sleep (paragraph 1)
2. looked after when he was young (paragraph 2)
3. give something you have to other people too (paragraph 3)
4. very cold (paragraph 3)
5. calls in a loud voice (paragraph 4)

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

a  8.18 Listen and circle the correct answer, a, b, or c.
1. Where did the woman go at the weekend?
   a. to the cinema  b. nowhere  c. to the beach
2. The man doesn't eat enough ______.
   a. fruit  b. fish  c. vegetables
3. How often does the woman go to the gym?
   a. only on Friday  b. twice a week  c. every day
4. What time does the woman get up?
   a. 7.00  b. 7.15  c. 7.30
5. What do the men have in common?
   a. They drink coffee.  b. They used to be married.  c. They’re teachers.

b  8.19 Listen and write M (the man), W (the woman), or B (both).
Who…?
1. went to bed late
2. is good in the mornings
3. went to Liverpool University
4. studied Economics
5. knows Fiona

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

a  Can you…? Yes (✔)

[Checkboxes]
- talk about why you like / don’t like the weekend
- talk about your lifestyle (food, exercise, etc.)
- talk about your typical morning

b  Tell your partner about food you like / don’t like. Find three things you have in common.
Fact is always stranger than fiction.

Here is a selection of true stories from around the world last week.

1. Prize of the week.
   James Bolton, who is unemployed, was very excited when he won first prize in a raffle last week. The prize was a weekend for two at a hotel in Bournemouth on the south coast of England. Unfortunately he was less excited when he saw the name of the hotel.

2. Mistake of the week
   A 33-year-old Norwegian man came home one night from the pub and got into bed next to his wife. The woman immediately woke up, screamed, and jumped out of bed. ‘Who are you?’ asked the man. ‘You aren’t my wife.’

3. Helpful advice of the week
   An Italian was driving along the motorway when his cousin phoned him on his mobile. He told him to drive more slowly, because the police were waiting a few kilometres ahead to catch drivers who were going too fast. The driver slowed down, but two kilometres later the police stopped him and gave him a fine.

4. Animal story of the week
   Nurse Katie Parrett from Manchester couldn’t understand why her cat was behaving so strangely. The cat came home, attacked her bed, and then jumped on her plate while she was having her dinner. Then it fell asleep and began snoring. The next day when she spoke to her neighbour the mystery was solved.

5. Honest citizen of the week
   A man in Baltimore was arrested last week when he tried to become a policeman. When he filled in his application form for the job, he answered ‘yes’ to the question, ‘Have you ever committed a crime?’

6. Romantic hero of the week
   The passengers on a German bus were amazed when their driver suddenly stopped the bus, got out, and began hitting a man who was making a phone call in a public phone box. First, the bus driver hit the man twice. Then the other man hit the bus driver very hard with the phone. The passengers were left sitting in the bus, and the bus driver was taken to hospital.
1 SPEAKING & READING
a Look at the pictures 1–6 on p.100. In which picture can you see…?
   somebody screaming
   someone getting a fine
   somebody winning a raffle
   something snoring
   somebody being arrested
   some passengers looking amazed
b Read the stories and look at the pictures. Then in pairs, match them with their endings A–F.

A They had seen him using his mobile phone while he was driving.
B He had discovered the day before that his wife was having an affair with the man in the phone box.
C When they questioned him, the man admitted he had stolen a car a few months before and had robbed five people in Texas.
D The neighbour had seen it earlier that evening in the local pub. One of the customers had given it a drink of rum. Luckily, it has not become an alcoholic!
E It was the hotel where he had worked as a porter the previous month. He had lost his job there.
F The man had accidentally gone into his neighbour’s house. The neighbour had left the back door open as she was waiting for her husband to come home.
c Read the stories again. Look at the pictures. Can you remember the stories?

2 GRAMMAR past perfect
a Look at these sentences from story 3. Answer the questions.
a The police stopped the Italian driver.
b They had seen him using his mobile phone.
1 Which action happened first, a or b?
2 What’s the form of the verb in sentence b?
b Read the endings of the other five stories again and underline examples of had + past participle. Did these actions happen before or after the main part of the story?
c p.142 Grammar Bank 9A. Read the rules and do the exercises.

3 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds, sentence stress
a What sound do the pink letters make in each sentence? Match the sentences with the sound pictures.

b 9. Now listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm, and practise making the sounds.

3 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds, sentence stress
a What sound do the pink letters make in each sentence? Match the sentences with the sound pictures.

b 9. Now listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm, and practise making the sounds.

4 VOCABULARY adverbs
a Circle the adverbs in these five sentences from the stories in 1. Underline the stressed syllable. Which two are opposites?

b Complete the sentences with one of the adverbs.
1 I ______ took the office keys home with me.
2 They were having a relaxed dinner when ______ the baby started to cry.
3 The boss left, and ______ everyone started talking again.
4 ______, the weather was terrible when we were on holiday.
5 Last week I had a car crash. ______, nobody was hurt.

c In pairs, invent completions of these sentences.
1 She got to work very late. Luckily…
2 I was watching a good film on TV when suddenly…
3 When we got out of the car it was raining. Unfortunately, we…
4 I got home, had a shower, and immediately…
5 I’m really sorry about the book you lent me. I accidentally…

5 SPEAKING
1 SPEAKING & LISTENING

Then he kissed me

**ask**  **dance**  **say**  **walk (x2)**  **want**

1. Well, he **walked** up to me and he **asked** me if I **dance** to dance.
He looked kind of nice and so I **said** I might take a chance.
When he **said** he held me tight
And when he **asked** me home that night
5. All the stars were shining bright
And then he kissed me.

**can’t**  **don’t know**  **is**  **say**  **see**

Each time I **don’t see** him I **feel** wait to see him again.
I wanted to let him know that he **know** more than a friend.
I **know** just what to do

10. So I whispered ‘I love you’
And he **said** that he loved me too
And then he kissed me.
He kissed me in a way that I’ve never been kissed before,
He kissed me in a way that I wanna be kissed forever more.

**ask**  **feel**  **give**  **know**  **take**

15. I **felt** that he was mine so I **asked** him all the love that I had.
And one day he **took** me home to meet his mum and his dad.
Then he **took** me to be his bride
And always be right by his side
19. **took** so happy I almost cried

20. And then he kissed me.

**Glossary**

L.2 He looked kind of nice
L.2 take a chance
L.3 hold somebody tight
L.5 shining bright
L.14 wanna

He looked like a nice boy.
y try something to see if you are lucky
put your arms around somebody strongly
with a very strong light
want to

a. Number the pictures A–H in a logical order.
b. Complete the song with the verbs in the past simple. Use the glossary to help you.
c. Listen and check. Were your pictures in the right order?
2 GRAMMAR reported speech
A  'I love you too.'
B  'Do you want to dance?'
C  He said he loved me too.
D  He asked me if I wanted to dance.

a Look at the sentences. In pairs, answer the questions.
1 Which sentences are the speaker’s exact words (direct speech)?
2 Which sentences describe what the speaker said (reported speech)?
3 What tense are the verbs in direct speech? p _______ simple
4 What tense are the verbs in reported speech? p _______ simple

b p.142 Grammar Bank 9B. Read the rules and do the exercises.

c Change these sentences from direct speech to reported speech.
1 'My name's Dean.' He said that his name was Dean.
2 'Do you want a drink?' He asked her if ___________________.
3 'I'm not thirsty.' She said ___________________.
4 'Will you go out with me?' He asked ___________________.
5 'Can I walk you home?' He asked ___________________.
6 'Where do you live?' He asked ___________________.
7 'I live quite near.' She said ___________________.
8 'I fell in love at first sight.' He told Millie ___________________.

3 VOCABULARY say, tell, or ask?
Complete the sentences with said, told, or asked.
1 Jane ______ me if I could lend her some money.
2 I ______ him that I couldn’t meet him tonight.
3 I ______ that I was too busy to go out.
4 We ______ the man if he could help us.
5 Annie ______: ‘I have a problem.’
6 Annie ______ us that she had a problem.
7 She ______ her husband that she was leaving him.
8 He ______ the teacher that he had forgotten his homework.

4 PRONUNCIATION rhyming verbs
a Match a verb in the past tense from A with a rhyming one in B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>said</td>
<td>crossed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paid</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caught</td>
<td>wore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lost</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spent</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>told</td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saw</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heard</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>preferred</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 3.3 Listen and check.

5 SPEAKING
a Choose and tick (√) five questions below to ask your partner. Ask your questions and write down his / her answers.

1 Do you like flying?
2 What's your favourite colour?
3 Can you play a musical instrument?
4 Do you like flying?
5 Where are your parents from?
6 How long have you lived here?
7 What languages do you speak?
8 What kind of computer do you have?
9 Do you have any phobias?
10 Where do you buy your clothes?

b Change partners. Tell partner 2 what you asked partner 1 and what his / her answers were.

I asked him what his favourite colour was and he told me that it was blue.
FILE 1 Grammar Bank p.126
In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1 Where _____?
   a is from your sister    b your sister is from
   c is your sister from
2 A What _____?
   B He's a doctor.
   a does Richard do    b is Richard do    c does Richard
3 My father never _____ TV.
   a watch b watches c watches
4 In the painting two women _____ at a table.
   a are sitting b sit c are sit
5 A What's that?
   B It's the thing _____ connects my camera to the
     computer.
   a who b which c where

FILE 2 Grammar Bank p.128
In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1 Where _____ last summer?
   a you went b did you went c did you go
2 The exercise was very difficult. We _____ do it.
   a didn't can b didn't could c couldn't
3 When I opened the door I saw it _____.
   a was raining b rained c were raining
4 Who _____ this song? I like it.
   a write b wrote c did write
5 _____ it was dark, I could read the map.
   a Because b But c Although

FILE 3 Grammar Bank p.130
In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1 _____ have a holiday this year.
   a I don't going to b I'm not going to c I'm not going
2 A What _____ this evening?
   B Nothing special.
   a do you do b are you doing c are you going
3 A My exam is tomorrow.
   B You _____.
   a won't pass b don't pass c aren't passing
4 A It's hot in here.
   B _____ open the window?
   a I'll b Will I c Shall I
5 In my dream I saw a man. He _____ the violin.
   a was played b played c was playing

FILE 4 Grammar Bank p.132
In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1 _____ any of his films?
   a Have you ever saw b Did you ever seen
   c Have you ever seen
2 A Do you want a coffee?
   B No thanks, _____ one.
   a I've just had b I've had just c I just have
3 A Is your brother here?
   B No, he _____.
   a hasn't already arrived b hasn't yet arrived c hasn't arrived yet
4 She doesn't work _____ me.
   a as hard as b as hard than c as hard
5 This is _____ city I've ever been to.
   a the nicest b the nicer c the most nice

FILE 5 Grammar Bank p.134
In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1 He went to the supermarket _____ some milk.
   a for to get b for get c to get
2 We're thinking of _____ a new office.
   a opening b to open c open
3 _____
   a don't must to b mustn't c don't have to
4 You _____ remember to bring your book
   a must to b must c have
tomorrow.
4 You _____ remember to bring your book
   a must to b must c have
5 He _____ the stairs and opened the door.
   a ran b up c ran up

Tomorrow's a holiday. We _____ work.
FILE 6 Grammar Bank p.136

In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1. What will you do if you _____ the exam?
   a. won’t pass  b. don’t pass  c. will pass
2. If we had a garden, I _____ a dog.
   a. would buy  b. bought  c. ’ll buy
3. I wouldn’t camp near a river if I _____ there were crocodiles there.
   a. would thought  b. thought  c. think
4. A What are you going to do this weekend?
   B I don’t know. I _____.
   a. might to go away  b. might go away  c. may to go away
5. You _____ coffee late at night.
   a. shouldn’t to drink  b. don’t should drink  c. shouldn’t drink

FILE 7 Grammar Bank p.138

In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1. I’ve known my best friend _____.
   a. since ten years  b. for ten years  c. for 1995
2. How long _____ your car?
   a. do you have  b. have you  c. have you had
3. He’s divorced now, but he _____ for 20 years.
   a. has been married  b. was married  c. is married
4. He _____ have a lot of friends at school.
   He wasn’t very popular.
   a. didn’t used to  b. didn’t use to  c. doesn’t use to
5. The radio _____ by Marconi.
   a. invented  b. is invented  c. was invented

FILE 8 Grammar Bank p.140

In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1. When I’m tired I don’t want to see _____.
   a. anybody  b. nobody  c. somebody
2. I can’t come tonight. I’ve got _____ work.

FILE 9 Grammar Bank p.142

In pairs or small groups, circle a, b, or c.
1. We were too late. When we arrived the match _____.
   a. had finished  b. has finished  c. finished
2. They couldn’t open the door because they _____ the key.
   a. didn’t brought  b. hadn’t brought  c. haven’t brought
3. I love you.’ She said she _____ me.
   a. love  b. loved  c. is loving
4. I asked her if _____ to dance.
   a. he wanted  b. she wants  c. she wanted
5. She asked the boy what _____.
   a. was his name  b. is his name  c. his name was
Vocabulary

Do the exercises in pairs or small groups.

a Circle the word that is different.

car train station bus

1 funny friendly lazy generous
2 eye mouth nose toe
3 feet legs knees fingers
4 see hear ear smell
5 foggy windy sunny cloudy
6 dress cap skirt blouse
7 socks trainers pyjamas boots
8 get an e-mail get a message get home get a present
9 duck chicken butterfly swan
10 dolphin whale eagle shark

d Write the opposite verb or adjective.

1 friendly
2 talkative
3 crowded
4 rude
5 patient
6 lend money
7 pass an exam
8 push the door
9 find your keys
10 buy clothes

e Label the pictures.

1 __________________________ 6 __________________________
2 __________________________ 7 __________________________
3 __________________________ 8 __________________________
4 __________________________ 9 __________________________
5 __________________________ 10 __________________________

c Complete with on, up, etc.

1 I was born ______ 2nd April.
2 What are you doing ______ the weekend?
3 We always go on holiday ______ July.
4 I don’t agree ______ you.
5 Wait ______ me. I’m nearly ready.
6 Don’t throw ______ those papers.
7 I always try ______ clothes before I buy them.
8 Hurry ______. We’re late.
9 I have to look ______ my little sister today.
10 I’ll pay you ______ the money tomorrow.
Pronunciation

Do the exercises in pairs or small groups.

a) Underline the word with a different sound.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>enough</td>
<td>mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>since</td>
<td>tidy</td>
<td>might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>already</td>
<td>friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>although</td>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>won’t</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>borrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>worn</td>
<td>shirt</td>
<td>dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>how</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>awful</td>
<td>ball</td>
<td>story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>fast</td>
<td>pass</td>
<td>ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>hour</td>
<td>holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>gym</td>
<td>argue</td>
<td>forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>used</td>
<td>yet</td>
<td>years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>twin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) Underline the stressed syllable.

<p>| |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c) Write the words.

<p>| |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Communication

1B Claire and Nina  
**Student A**

a  Ask B questions and complete the chart for Nina.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Claire</th>
<th>Nina</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age?</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From?</td>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lives in?</td>
<td>Bristol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job?</td>
<td>Journalist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smokes?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Likes?</td>
<td>comedy films, cats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doesn’t like?</td>
<td>men who smoke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b  Answer B’s questions about Claire.

c  In pairs, decide who is the best partner for Richard. Why?

1C Describe and draw  **Student A**

a  Look at your painting for a minute. Then describe it for B to draw.

b  Listen to B describing his/her painting. Try to draw it. Don’t look at it. Ask B questions to help you.

c  Now compare your drawings with the original paintings!

1D Crossword  **Student A**

a  Ask B for the definitions of your missing words. Guess the words and complete your crossword.

b  Give definitions of the words B asks for.

```
1  IC
2  C
3  E
4  S
5  H
6  O
7  R
8  T
9  W
10 MATCH
11 H
12 CINE
13 N
14 B
15 K
16 FOOT
17 BALLER
18 E
19 EXTROVERT
```
I was 1953. The photographer was living in Paris. He didn't have much money, and was living in a small room, and taking photos of the city every day. One day he saw that some people were painting the Eiffel Tower, and he decided to take some photographs. He went up the tower and suddenly he saw the man in the photo. The man was painting. The photographer was very nervous because he was sure that the painter was going to fall. He took his photo and a few weeks later the photo was in Life magazine. The photo became very famous and they made postcards and a poster with it. Later the company that paints the Eiffel Tower phoned him and invited him to lunch. They told him that the painter was an acrobat. His name was Zazou.

2C Music quiz Student A

a Write your questions.

1 Which singer (PLAY) football for Real Madrid?
   Which singer played football for Real Madrid
   a Julio Iglesias
   b Enrique Iglesias
   c Plácido Domingo

2 Which group Beyoncé (SING) in?
   a Destiny's Child
   b The Spice Girls
   c Atomic Kitten

3 Who (SING) Philadelphia in the film of the same name?
   a Phil Collins
   b George Michael
   c Bruce Springsteen

4 What kind of music the Sex Pistols (INVENT)?
   a Reggae
   b Punk
   c Hip Hop

5 When MTV (BEGIN)?
   a 1971
   b 1981
   c 1991

6 Which of these groups (NOT HAVE) brothers or sisters in it?
   a Oasis
   b The Corrs
   c Red Hot Chili Peppers

7 Whose daughter Michael Jackson (MARRY) in 1994?
   a Elvis Presley's
   b Frank Sinatra's
   c Paul McCartney's

8 Who (SAY) ‘Eminem is the biggest danger to young Americans since polio’?
   a Clint Eastwood
   b Arnold Schwarzenegger
   c George W. Bush

9 Which group (SING) Losing my Religion?
   a Blur
   b REM
   c Oasis

10 Which instrument Sting (PLAY) on the song Every Breath you Take?
   a piano
   b guitar
   c double bass

b Ask B your questions. Give your partner one mark for each correct answer. Answer B’s questions. Who got the most right answers?

a Look at the photos and read the text about The Eiffel Tower painter. Try to remember the information.

b Tell B the story of The Eiffel Tower painter. Try to tell it from memory.

c Now B will tell you about Leaving for Newfoundland.
Communication

3D  Dreams  Student A
a  Last night you dreamt about these things. Prepare to tell B about your dream.

b  B is a psychoanalyst. Tell him/her about your dream. He/she will tell you what it means.
   Last night I dreamt about a river...

c  Swap roles. Now you are a psychoanalyst. Listen to B’s dream. Number the things below in the order he/she talks about them:
   - Ice cream – You will get some money (from the lottery or from a relative).
   - Long hair – You want to be free. Perhaps you have problems with your family or a partner.
   - A key – You have a problem and you are looking for a solution.
   - People speaking other languages – You think your life is boring – you would like to have a more exciting life.
   - Travelling by bus – You are worried about a person who is controlling your life.

d  Now use the information in c to interpret B’s dream.
   First you dreamt about... This means...

4D  The best and the worst  Student A
a  Write names in at least SIX of the ovals on p.47.
   In 1, one of the best books you’ve ever read.
   In 2, the coldest place you’ve ever been to.
   In 3, the most generous person you know.
   In 4, the most beautiful modern building you’ve ever seen.
   In 5, the worst programme on TV at the moment.
   In 6, the most frightening film you’ve ever seen.
   In 7, the best restaurant you’ve ever been to.
   In 8, the most untidy person in your family.

b  Go back to p.47.

5A  Guess the infinitive  Student A
a  Look at sentences 1–6. What do you think the missing infinitives are?
   Don’t write anything yet!
   ± = positive infinitive  □ = negative infinitive
   1 I don’t like my job. I’ve decided _______ another one. ±
   2 Oh dear! I forgot _______ the lights. ±
   3 I promise _______ anybody your secret. □
   4 Your sister’s really friendly. It was very nice _______ her. ±
   5 I was sorry _______ you when you were here last week. □
   6 You don’t need _______ an umbrella. It’s not going to rain. ±

b  Read your sentence 1 to B. If it’s not right, guess another verb until B says ‘That’s right’. Then write in the infinitive. Continue with 2–6.

c  Listen to B’s sentence 7. If it’s the same as 7 below, say ‘That’s right’. If not, say ‘Try again’ until B gets it right. Continue with 8–12.
   7 Remember to phone your father on his birthday.
   8 It’s often difficult to understand films in English.
   9 It’s a very formal dinner, so it’s important not to be late.
   10 I’m going to Australia to visit some friends.
   11 The jacket was really expensive so I decided not to buy it.
   12 My mobile number is very easy to remember.

6C  Decisions, decisions  Student A
a  Imagine that you are a very indecisive person. B is going to ask you some questions. Answer B’s questions. Give two possibilities each time using I may or I might. Then B will help you to make a decision.
   I don’t know. / I’m not sure. I might...or I may...

b  Swap roles. Now B is indecisive. Ask B question 1 below. Help B to make a decision using If I were you I’d...Say why. Continue with the other questions.
   1 Where are you going to go on holiday next summer?
   2 What are you going to do after class?
   3 What are you going to wear tomorrow?
   4 What are you going to buy when you next go shopping?
   5 Where are you going to have lunch on Sunday?
7D Passives quiz  Student A

a Complete your sentences with the verb in the passive and the right answer.

1 Until 1800 New York _________ (call) _________.
   a New Amsterdam  b New Hampshire  c New Liberty

2 Chess _________ (invent) by _________.
   a the Egyptians  b the Indians  c the Chinese

3 The Italian flag _________ (design) by _________.
   a Garibaldi  b Mussolini  c Napoleon

4 The first Levi jeans _________ (wear) by _________.
   a miners  b farmers  c cowboys

5 The first credit card _________ (use) in _________.
   a 1960  b 1970  c 1980

6 The Indiana Jones films _________ (direct) _________.
   a Stephen Spielberg  b George Lucas  c Stanley Kubrick

7 Penguins _________ (find) _________.
   a at the South Pole  b at the North Pole  c in Alaska

8 In the world 15,000 babies _________ (be born) _________.
   a every second  b every hour  c every day

b Read your sentences to B. B will tell you if you are right.

c Now listen to B’s sentences. Tell him/her if he/she is right.

B’s answers
1 The CD player was invented by Philips.
2 The Star Wars films were directed by George Lucas.
3 The politician Winston Churchill was born in a toilet.
4 The book which is stolen most often from libraries is The Guinness Book of Records.
5 The electric chair was invented by a dentist.
6 Football was first played by the British.
7 In 1962 the original London Bridge was bought by a rich American.
8 The noun which is used most frequently in conversation is time.

9A What had happened?  Student A

a Look at sentences 1–6 and think of the missing verb (□ = positive verb, □ = negative verb).
Don’t write anything yet!

1 Diana was very angry because her husband _________ the dinner. □
2 He couldn’t catch his plane because he _________ his passport at home. □
3 We went back to the hotel where we _________ on our honeymoon. □
4 The telephone wasn’t working because they _________ the bill. □
5 Miriam was surprised to hear that she _________ the exam. □
6 The shop assistant agreed to change the sweater, because I _________ it. □

b Read your sentence 1 to B. If it’s not right, try again until B tells you ‘That’s right’. Then write in the verb. Continue with 2–6.

c Listen to B say sentence 7. If it’s the same as 7 below, say ‘That’s right’. If not say ‘Try again’ until B gets it right. Continue with 8–12.

7 We went back to see the house where we _________ lived when we were children.
8 The flat was very dirty because nobody _________ cleaned it for a long time.
9 The crocodile was hungry because it _________ eaten anything for a long time.
10 I ran to the station, but the last train _________ gone.
11 I didn’t want to lend him the book because I _________ read it.
12 They got to the cinema late and the film _________ started.

8B Body age?  Students A+B

a Start with your calendar age. Add + or subtract – years according to your answers.

1 a –2  b 0  c +1
2 a –2  b –1  c +2
3 a +2  b +1  c 0  d –1
4 a +1  b –1  c –2
5 a –2  b –1  c +1
6 a +1  b +1  c +2  d 0
7 a –3  b +1  c +2  d +5
8 a –3  b +1  c +2
9 a +3  b 0  c –2
10 a –2  b 0  c –1
11 a –2  b –1  c 0  d +2
12 a +2  b +1  c –1
Communication

1B Claire and Nina  Student B

a) Answer A’s questions about Nina.

Name | Claire | Nina
--- | --- | ---
Age? | 23 |
From? | Hungary |
Lives in? | London |
Job? | Painter |
Smokes? | Yes (but only one or two a day) |
Likes? | good food, music | sport
Doesn’t like? |

b) Ask A questions and complete the chart for Claire.

c) In pairs, decide who is the best partner for Richard. Why?

1C Describe and draw  Student B

a) Look at your painting for a minute.

b) Listen to A describing his / her painting. Try to draw it. Don’t look at it. Ask questions to help you.

c) Now describe your painting for A to draw.

d) Now compare your drawings with the original paintings!
HE TOOK THIS PHOTO in 1949 in France. He was working for a magazine. They wanted photos of fishermen. The people in the photo were a fisherman called Marcel, his wife, and their little baby boy. Marcel was leaving to go to Canada and the photographer wanted to take a photo of him and his wife in front of the boat. He said, 'Kiss your wife goodbye. I need a photo with a kiss.' But Marcel was very shy and he gave his wife a very cold kiss. So the photographer said, 'Is that how you kiss your wife?' So he kissed her again, very naturally. This time he forgot about the photographer. The photo became quite famous. Many years later Marcel saw his photo in my book and he wrote to the photographer. He said that his son (the baby in the photo) was now 30 years old and was a fisherman too.

2B Famous photos

LEAVING FOR NEWFOUNDLAND
Willy Ronis 1949

H E T O O K T H I S P H O T O in 1949 in France. He was working for a magazine. They wanted photos of fishermen. The people in the photo were a fisherman called Marcel, his wife, and their little baby boy. Marcel was leaving to go to Canada and the photographer wanted to take a photo of him and his wife in front of the boat. He said, 'Kiss your wife goodbye. I need a photo with a kiss.' But Marcel was very shy and he gave his wife a very cold kiss. So the photographer said, 'Is that how you kiss your wife?' So he kissed her again, very naturally. This time he forgot about the photographer. The photo became quite famous. Many years later Marcel saw his photo in my book and he wrote to the photographer. He said that his son (the baby in the photo) was now 30 years old and was a fisherman too.

2C Music quiz

a Write your questions.

1 Which song (SING) Celine Dion in the film Titanic?
Which song did Celine Dion sing in the film Titanic?

- a I will always love you
- b My heart will go on
- c Love is in the air

2 Who (SEND) A Message in a Battle in 1979?

- a The Beach Boys
- b Dire Straits
- c The Police

3 Who (WRITE) the song Nothing compares 2U?

- a Prince
- b Sinead O’Connor
- c Bono

4 Which 'boy band' Robbie Williams (SING) with?

- a Take That
- b Westlife
- c New Kids on the Block

5 Which Beatle (DIE) in 2001?

- a Ringo Starr
- b John Lennon
- c George Harrison

6 Who (BE) a Material Girl?

- a Mariah Carey
- b Madonna
- c Christina Aguilera

7 Which heavy metal band Ozzy Osbourne (SING) with in the 1970s?

- a Black Sabbath
- b Deep Purple
- c Led Zeppelin

8 Which Spice Girl David Beckham (MARRY) in 2000?

- a Posh Spice
- b Sporty Spice
- c Ginger Spice

9 How the reggae singer Bob Marley (DIE)?

- a he took a drugs overdose
- b in a car accident
- c he had cancer

10 Which song Elton John (REWRITE) for the funeral of Princess Diana in 1997?

- a Sacrifice
- b Candle in the Wind
- c Your Song

b Answer A's questions. Then ask A your questions. Give your partner one mark for each correct answer. Who got the most right answers?

a Look at the photos and read about Leaving for Newfoundland.

b A will tell you about The Eiffel Tower painter.

c Now tell A about Leaving for Newfoundland. Try to tell it from memory.
3D Dreams Student B

a Last night you dreamt about these things. Prepare to tell A about your dream.

b You are a pyschoanalyst. Listen to A’s dream. Number the things below in the order he / she talks about them.

- Having a bath – you have a secret which nobody knows about.
- Dogs – you are looking for friends.
- Losing hair – you are going to lose some money.
- Lost luggage – a problem you have will soon get better.
- A river – you are going to be very lucky.

c Now use the information in b to interpret A’s dream.

Well, first you dreamt about… This means...

4D The best and the worst Student B

a Write the names in at least SIX of the ovals on p.47.

In 1, the healthiest person you know.
In 2, the best concert you’ve ever been to.
In 3, the most dangerous sport or activity you’ve ever done.
In 4, the meanest person you know.
In 5, the most boring sport you’ve ever watched.
In 6, the most beautiful old building you’ve seen.
In 7, the hottest place you’ve ever been to.
In 8, the worst film you’ve seen this year.

b Go back to p.47.

5A Guess the infinitive Student B

a Listen to A say sentence 1. If it’s the same as 1 below, say ‘That’s right’. If not, say ‘Try again’ until A gets it right. Continue with 2–6.

1 I don’t like my job. I’ve decided to look for another one.
2 Oh dear! I forgot to turn off the lights.
3 I promise not to tell anybody your secret.
4 Your sister’s really friendly. It was very nice to meet her.
5 I was sorry not to see you when you were here last week.
6 You don’t need to take an umbrella. It’s not going to rain.

b Look at sentences 7–12. What do you think the missing infinitives are? Don’t write anything yet!

+ = positive infinitive − = negative infinitive

7 Remember ________ your father on his birthday. +
8 It’s often difficult ________ films in English. −
9 It’s a very formal dinner, so it’s important ________ late. +
10 I’m going to Australia ________ some friends. +
11 The jacket was really expensive, so I decided ________ it. −
12 My mobile number is very easy ________. +

c Read your sentence 7 to A. If it’s not right, guess another verb until A says ‘That’s right’. Then write in the infinitive. Continue with 8–12.

4B Has he done it yet? Students A+B

a Work individually. Look at the list of things Max always does every morning. Has he already done them? Try to remember what was in the picture. Write sentences.

He’s already made the bed. OR He hasn’t made the bed yet.

make the bed  turn off computer
wash up his coffee cups  put his clothes in the cupboard
tidy his desk  have a shower
pick up towels  have breakfast
take the dog for a walk

b Work in pairs. Compare your sentences with your partner. Are they the same? Then go back to p.116 and compare your sentences with the picture. Were you right?
6C Decisions, decisions  

**Student B**

a A is a very indecisive person. You are going to help him / her make some decisions. Ask A question 1 below. Help A to make a decision using If I were you, I’d … Say why. Continue with the other questions.

1. What’s the next film you’re going to see?
2. What are you going to cook for dinner tonight?
3. What are you going to do on Saturday night?
4. What car are you going to buy next?
5. How are you going to celebrate your next birthday?

b Swap roles. Now imagine that you are a very indecisive person. Answer A’s questions. Give two possibilities each time using I may or I might … A will help you to make decisions.

I don’t know. / I’m not sure. I might… or I may…

7D Passives quiz  

**Student B**

a Complete your sentences with the verb in the passive and the right answer.

1. The CD player _________ (invent) by ________.
   a Sanyo  b Sony  c Philips

2. The Star Wars films _________ (direct) by ________.
   a George Lucas  b Steven Spielberg  c Stanley Kubrick

3. The politician Winston Churchill _________ (be born) ________.
   a on a train  b in a toilet  c under a bridge

4. The book which _________ (steal) most often from libraries is ________.
   a The Bible  b The Guinness Book of Records  c The Lord of the Rings

5. The electric chair _________ (invent) by ________.
   a a teacher  b a dentist  c a politician

6. Football _________ (play) by ________.
   a the British  b the Romans  c the Greeks

7. In 1962 the original London Bridge _________ (buy) by ________.
   a a rich American  b a museum  c the Royal family

8. The noun which _________ (use) most frequently in conversation is ________.
   a money  b time  c work

b Now listen to A’s sentences. Tell him / her if they are right.

A’s answers
1. Until 1800 New York was called New Amsterdam.
2. Chess was invented by the Chinese.
3. The Italian flag was designed by Napoleon.
4. The first Levi jeans were worn by miners.
5. The first credit card was used in 1970.
6. The Indiana Jones films were directed by George Lucas.
7. Penguins are found at the South Pole.
8. In the world 15,000 babies are born every hour.

9A What had happened?  

**Student B**

a Listen to A say sentence 1. If it’s the same as 1 below, say ‘That’s right.’ If not say, ‘Try again’ until B gets it right. Continue with 2–6.

1. Diana was very angry because her husband hadn’t cooked the dinner.
2. He couldn’t catch his flight because he had left his passport at home.
3. We went back to the hotel where we had stayed on our honeymoon.
4. The telephone wasn’t working because they hadn’t paid the bill.
5. Miriam was surprised to hear she had failed the exam.
6. The shop assistant agreed to change the sweater because I hadn’t worn it.

b Look at sentences 7–12 and think of the missing verb (⊕ = positive verb, □ = negative verb). Don’t write anything yet!

7. We went back to see the house where we ________ when we were children. ⊕
8. The flat was very dirty because nobody ________ it for a long time. ⊕
9. The crocodile was hungry because it ________ anything for a long time. □
10. I ran to the station, but the last train ________ ⊕
11. I didn’t want to lend him the book because I ________ it. ⊕
12. They got to the cinema late and the film ________ ⊕

c Read your sentence 7 to A. If it’s not right, try again until A tells you ‘that’s right’. Then write in the verb. Continue with 8–12.
3A Where are you going on holiday? students A+B

**FIJI**
Spend two or four weeks in the South Pacific with tropical beaches, sun, water sports, etc.
An unforgettable experience.

- **Departure**: 1 June
- **Return**: 15th or 30th June
- **Fly**: British Airways (via London) or Air France (via Paris)
- **Hotels**: Blue Lagoon (small beach hotel) or Tropics (modern luxury hotel)

**KENYA**
Go on a two- or four-week safari for the experience of a lifetime. In a 4x4 you will see lions, zebras, and elephants in their natural habitat.

- **Departure**: 1st June
- **Return**: 15th or 30th June
- **Fly**: British Airways (via London) or KLM (via Amsterdam)
- **Accommodation**: in luxury campsites or in hotels

**a** Read the adverts and choose a holiday. Decide:
- Where are you going?
- How are you getting there?
- When are you leaving?
- Where are you staying?
- When are you coming back?

**b** Now find a partner who has planned exactly the same holiday as you:
- A: Where are you going?
- B: To Fiji.
- A: Me too. How are you getting there?
- B: I'm flying with British Airways.
- A: I'm flying with British Airways, so we can't go together.

4B Has he done it yet? students A+B

Look at the picture for one minute and try to remember what's in it. ☀️ p.114
3C  I'll / Shall I? game

Play the game.

START

FINISH

Help, there's a spider.

She'll be here this afternoon.

Don't be late.

You forgot to buy milk.

5D  Cross country  Students A+B

My race

My partner's race

You are the organizer of a cross-country race. You have to plan the race for the runners. Draw a route on the map marked MY RACE, beginning at START and finishing at the FINISH line. Your route must include all the things in the picture but you can choose the order.

Take turns. A describe your route to your partner.
B must draw it on your map marked MY PARTNER'S RACE. You have to go down the hill, round the lake...

b  Swap roles.

d  Compare the two routes. Which is the most difficult?
1.2
1 A When's the exam?
   B Next week.
2 A The weekend goes so quickly.
   B I know. I can't believe it's Monday tomorrow.
3 A Excuse me! Do you have the right time?
   B Yes, it's twenty-five to nine.
4 A Thanks.
   B We're going to be late for class.
5 A Relax. It doesn't start until quarter past ten. It's only five past.
6 A When was she born?
   B Let's see. She was born on the 23rd August 1947.
   A Where?
   B In Germany.
7 A Do you have any tickets left for the 5th of June?
   B Let's see... Yes, we do. How many would you like?
   A Two please.
   B OK, that's 27 euros please.
8 A How much are those flowers?
   B 50 euros.
   A 50? That's not cheap.

1.3
Richard
I was very optimistic when I went to meet Claire. My first impression was that she was very friendly and very extrovert. Physically she was my type – she was quite slim and not very tall with long dark hair – very pretty. And she was very funny too. She had a great sense of humour. We laughed a lot. But the only problem was that Claire was very talkative. She talked all the time and I just listened. She wasn't very interested in me. At the end of the evening I knew everything about her and she knew nothing about me. Claire was the kind of woman I could have as a friend but not as a girlfriend.

1.4
When I first saw Nina I couldn’t believe it. I thought ‘Wow! Thanks mum.’ She’s very attractive – she’s got short dark hair – and she’s quite tall. She’s Hungarian, from Budapest but her English was fantastic.

1.8
OK, now the painting we are looking at now is by the French painter Toulouse-Lautrec.

1.11
Presenter OK, Adam. Card number 1. It's a person. It's somebody who works in a restaurant.
   Adam A cook.
   Presenter No, no, no. It's the person who takes the food from the kitchen to the tables.
   Adam Oh a waiter?
   Presenter That's right. Card number 2. It's a place. It's a place where you go when you want to buy something.
   Adam A shop.
   Presenter Yes, but it's a very big shop where you can buy anything.
   Adam Is it a supermarket?
   Presenter Yes, well done. OK card number 3. It's a thing... mmm. It's a thing which you use to talk to people.
   Adam Your mouth?
   Presenter No, no. It's a kind of machine. It's very small. Nearly everybody has one nowadays.
   Adam What is it?
   Presenter That's it! Card number 4. It's an adjective. It's the opposite of fat.
   Adam Thin?
   Presenter Yes! It's thin, but it means thin and attractive.
   Adam What is it?
   Presenter Yes! Number 5. It's an adjective again. Er... it's how you feel when you have a lot of work.
   Adam Worried?
   Presenter No, but it's similar to worried. It's how you feel when you have a lot of things to do but you don't have time to do them.
   Adam Busy?
   Presenter No!
   Adam What is it?
   Presenter Yes, brilliant. And card number six, the last one. OK. It's a verb. For example, you do this with the TV.
   Adam Watch?
   Presenter No?
   Presenter Yes! What do you do when you finish watching the TV.
   Adam Er... go to bed?
   Presenter No, you do it before you go to bed.
   Adam Is it _____?
   Presenter Yes!

1.14
Mark
Hi. My name's Mark Ryder. I'm American and I live in San Francisco. I work for a music company called MTC. I'm divorced and I have a daughter.

Last month I went to England on a work trip, and I met Allie. She's British, and she works for MTC in the UK. We had a great five days. We went out for coffee. We went shopping. It was my birthday, and she bought me a present. We went out for dinner. I really liked her, and I think she liked me too.

I invited her to a conference in San Francisco, and she said yes. And now I'm at the airport. I'm waiting for her to arrive.
1.17
Mark Allie, hi!
Allie Hi Mark.
Mark You look great!
Allie You too. How are you?
Mark I'm fine. How was the flight?
Allie Long! Eleven hours.
Mark You must be really tired.
Allie Yes. I couldn't sleep at all. The people next to me had a baby with them. What's the time here? I need to change my watch.
Mark It's seven in the evening.
Allie It's three in the morning for me.
Mark OK, I'm going to take you right to the hotel and you can rest.
Allie Fine. Sorry!
Mark You are going to love San Francisco! I'm so pleased you came!
Allie Me too. It's great to see you again.
Mark Come on. My car's in the parking lot. Let's go.

2.4
Marinette We didn't know that our picture was so famous until thirty years later. One day I was working in the café when the man from the bookshop next door came in. He was holding a new book which had a photo on the cover. Suddenly I said, 'I don't believe it! That's Henri and I when we were very young.'

Henri I remember that afternoon at the Bastille very well. When the man took that photo we were arguing! Henri was standing very near me. I was saying, 'Henri, don't stand so near me, there is somebody behind us.'

Presenter Hello and welcome to today's Holiday Programme. Today we've asked you to call in with your holiday horror stories – holidays where things went wrong. Our first caller today is Sean from Belfast. Hi Sean.

Sean Hello.
Presenter So where was this holiday?
Sean Well, this didn't happen to me. It happened to my aunt and uncle, last summer.
Presenter Where did they go?
Sean To Ibiza.
Presenter A fantastic place for a holiday.
Sean Yes, a fantastic place if you’re seventeen – but they’re nearly seventy!
Presenter Oh...
Sean And they wanted a quiet holiday, a relaxing holiday – you know. They like walking in the countryside, sitting on quiet beaches – things like that. They don’t go abroad very often, but they wanted to do something different.
Presenter So why did they choose Ibiza? It’s the party island.
Sean Yes, it is now but they didn’t know that.

Marinette People who know this photo always think of us as the eternal lovers, like Romeo and Juliet. But life isn’t like that. It’s very difficult to stay in love when you see your husband every day at home and you see him every day at work too. And I’m very hard-working but Henri is still a dreamer. Ah, those were the days...

2.18
Two hours later a police car arrived at Hannah's house. A policewoman knocked at the door. 'Good evening, Madam,' she said. 'Are you Hannah Davis? I'd like to speak to you. Can I come in?'
The policewoman came in at sat down on the sofa. 'Are you a friend of Jamie Dixon?' she asked. 'Yes,' said Hannah.

Presenter 'I understand you were going to meet him this evening.'

Mark Here you go, Allie. A cappuccino – see, I remembered!
Allie Well done! Thanks.
Mark Did you sleep well?
Allie Yes, very well. How are things?
Mark They’re fine.
Allie What are the plans for the week?
Mark Well, today we don’t have any free time. But tomorrow I’m going to take you to this great little restaurant I know.
Allie That sounds good.
Mark And then on Wednesday night there’s a cocktail party here at the hotel, and then a conference dinner on Thursday. Is there anything special you want to do?
Allie Well, I’d like to see the bay and the Golden Gate Bridge. And I’d like to go shopping if there’s time.
Brad Hi Mark, how are you doing?
Mark Hi Brad. I’m fine, just fine.
Brad Aren’t you going to introduce me?
3.7

**Presenter** Today's topic is 'positive thinking'. We all know that people who are positive enjoy life more than people who are negative and pessimistic. But scientific studies show that positive people are also healthier, get better more quickly when they're ill, and live longer. A recent study shows that positive people are optimistic and think positively, on average, nine years longer than pessimistic people who think negatively. So, let's hear what you the listeners think. Do you have any tips to help us be more positive in our lives?

3.8

**Presenter** And our first caller this evening is Andy. Hi Andy. What's your tip for positive thinking?

**Andy** Hello. Well, I think it's very important to live in the present and not in the past. Don't think about mistakes made in the past. You can't change the past. The important thing is to think about how you will do things better in the future.

**Presenter** Thank you, Andy. And now we have another caller. What's your name, please?

**Julie** Hi, my name's Julie. My tip is think positive thoughts, not negative ones. We all have negative thoughts sometimes but when we start having them we need to stop and try to change them into positive ones. Like, if you have an exam tomorrow and you start thinking 'I'm sure I'll fail', then you'll fail the exam. So you need to change that negative thought to a positive thought. Just think to yourself 'I'll pass'. Do this and it usually works.

**Presenter** Thank you, Julie. And our next caller is Giovanna. Hi, Giovanna.

**Giovanna** Hi. My tip is don't spend a lot of time reading the papers or watching the news on TV. It's always bad news and it just makes you feel depressed. Read a book or listen to your favourite music instead.

**Presenter** Thanks, Giovanna. And our next caller is Miriam, Miriam?

**Miriam** Hi.

**Presenter** Hi, Miriam. What's your tip?

**Miriam** My tip is to stop and do all the good things that happened to you. Then keep the list with you, in your bag or in a pocket, and if you're feeling a bit sad or depressed just take it out and read it. It'll make you feel better.

**Presenter** Thanks, Miriam. And our last call is from Michael. Hi, Michael. We're listening.

**Michael** Hi. My tip is to try to use positive language when you speak to other people. You know, if your friend has a problem don't say 'I'm sorry' or 'Oh poor you', say something positive like 'Don't worry!' Everything will be OK.' That way you'll make the other person think more positively about their problem.

3.13

**Patient** So, what does it mean, doctor?

**Dr Muller** Well, first the party. A party is a group of people. This means that you're going to meet a lot of people. I think you're going to be very busy.

**Patient** At work?

**Dr Muller** Yes, at work... you work in an office, I think?

**Patient** Yes, that's right.

**Dr Muller** I think the party means you are going to have a lot of meetings.

**Patient** What about the champagne?

**Dr Muller** Let me look at my notes again. Ah yes, you were drinking champagne. Champagne means a celebration. It's a symbol of success. So we have a meeting or meetings and then a celebration. Maybe in the future you'll have a meeting with your boss, about a possible promotion?

**Patient** Well, it's possible. I hope so... What about the garden and the flowers? Do they mean anything?

**Dr Muller** Yes. Flowers are a positive symbol. So, the flowers mean that you are feeling positive about the future. So perhaps you already knew about this possible promotion?

**Patient** No, I didn't. But it's true. I am very happy at work and I feel very positive about my future. That's not where my problems are. My problems are with my love life. Does my dream tell you anything about that?

**Dr Muller** Mm, yes it does. You're single, aren't you?

**Patient** Yes, well, divorced.

**Dr Muller** Because the violin music tells me you want some romance in your life - you're looking for a partner perhaps?

**Patient** Yes, yes. I am. In fact, I met a very nice woman last month... I really like her, ...I think I'm in love with her. I'm meeting her tonight.

**Dr Muller** In your dreams you saw an owl... in a tree?

**Patient** Yes, an owl... a big owl.

**Dr Muller** The owl represents an older person. I think you'll need to ask this older person for help. Maybe this 'older person' is me! Maybe you need my help?

**Patient** Well, yes, what I really want to know is... Does this person... this woman... love me?

**Dr Muller** You remember the end of your dream? You were feeling cold.

**Patient** Yes, my feet were very cold.

**Dr Muller** Well... I think perhaps you already know the answer to your question.

**Patient** You mean she doesn't love me.

**Dr Muller** No, I don't think so. I think you will need to find another woman. I'm sorry.
3.19
Waiter: Are you ready to order?
Mark: Yes, to start a tomato and mozzarella salad—is that right, Allie?
Allie: Yes.
Mark: And the mushroom soup for me.
Waiter: And for your main course?
Allie: I'll have the fried chicken.
Waiter: With French fries or a baked potato?
Allie: A baked potato, please.
Waiter: And for you, sir?
Mark: I'd like the steak, with French fries.
Waiter: How would you like your steak? Rare, medium, well done?
Mark: Rare, please.
Waiter: And to drink?
Mark: Could you bring us the wine list, please?

3.18
Waiter: Your check, sir.
Mark: Thanks.
Waiter: Thank you.
Allie: Thank you, Mark. That was a lovely dinner.
Mark: I'm glad you enjoyed it.
Allie: How's your daughter?
Mark: Jennifer! She's fine. She's with her mother in Los Angeles.
Allie: Mark?
Mark: Yeah.
Allie: Can I ask you something? Something personal?
Mark: Sure. What?
Allie: How long were you married?
Mark: Three years.
Allie: Why did you break up?
Mark: There were a lot of reasons. We were very young when we had Jennifer. We were both working very hard. We didn't spend much time together...the usual story. What about you, Allie?
Allie: Well, there was someone. I met him when I was at university. We were together for two years. We broke up.
Mark: Why?
Allie: I don't know. Usual story!
Mark: Thank you. Listen, it's early—it's only nine o'clock. Shall we go for a walk?
Allie: Good idea. Where shall we go?
Mark: There's a place called Fisherman's Wharf, it's right on the bay. There are a lot of cafés and bars. We could have another cup of coffee.
Allie: Fine. Let's go.

4.9
1. Definitely more. My daughter got married last year and she and her husband live quite far away. She rings me almost every day to tell me how everything is going, and we usually chat for hours. My phone bill is now double what it was when she was living at home.
2. I spend a lot less time than before. My youngest child has just started school, and I've gone back to work, so I never make lunch now during the week—I just have a sandwich. And in the evenings we often get take-away pizzas or Chinese food, or we heat something up in the microwave. I only really spend time in the kitchen at weekends.
3. Well I'd say less—though I'm not sure if my parents would agree. I get so much homework now that I never go to bed before 11 or 12, but I still get up at seven in the morning. It's true I get up later at weekends, but that's only two days out of seven.

4.10
Tim: First I did the photo test. I was near Charing Cross station. I stopped a man who was walking quite slowly down the road and I said, 'Excuse me, could you take my photo?' The man said, 'No, no, no time for that,' and kept walking. Then I asked a businessman in a grey suit who was walking towards the station. He took one photo, but when I asked him to take another one he walked away quickly.

Next, it was the shopping test. I went to a tourist shop in Oxford Street and I bought a key ring and a red bus. The red bus was very expensive. The total price was forty pounds. I gave the man a hundred pounds—two fifty pound notes. He gave me sixty pounds back.

Finally it was the accident test. For this test I went down into the Tube (the London Underground). As I went down the stairs I fell over and sat on the floor. A man immediately stopped and looked down at me. I thought he was going to help me but he didn't—he just said, 'Why don't you look where you are going?'

4.12
Receptionist: Good morning, ma'am. How can I help you?
Allie: I want to go shopping. Where's the best place to go?
Receptionist: Well, all the big department stores are around Union Square.
Allie: Can you tell me how to get there?
Receptionist: Yes, of course. Go out of the hotel and turn left. Go straight ahead, down Sutter Street. Turn left at Stockton—it's the third street on the left. Union Square will be in front of you. You can't miss it.

Allie: Thanks.

4.15
Allie: Oh, where is it? Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to Union Square?
Brad: Hey—don't I know you?
Allie: I don't think so.
Brad: Allie, I'm Brad! Brad Martin from the Los Angeles office. I'm Mark's friend. Remember? We met yesterday at the hotel.
Allie: Oh yes, that's right. Brad. I'm so sorry.
Brad: No problem. What are you doing here?
Allie: I want to go shopping. I'm looking for Union Square. But I'm lost.
Brad: Where's Mark?
Allie: He's at the hotel—he had a meeting, I think.
Brad: Listen, Allie. I'm going to take you for a cup of coffee at Del Monaco's—they have
the best coffee in San Francisco, and amazing cookies. And then I'll walk with you to Union Square.

Allie That's really kind of you. Are you sure?
Brad Absolutely. It's my pleasure.
Allie OK. Great. I'm awfully new cities. I always get lost.
Brad Oh, I love your British accent...

5.1

1 Harry Hello, you're one of Peter's friends aren't you?
Adrian That's right. I'm Adrian.
Harry Hi, I'm Harry. Are you enjoying the party?
Adrian Yes.
Harry So, what do you do for a living, Adrian?
Adrian I'm a doctor.
Harry A doctor? Oh, that's good. Listen, I have a problem with my back. Could you have a look at it? I've got a pain just here...
Adrian Sorry, can you excuse me? I've just seen Peter over there and I want to wish him a Happy Birthday.

2 Man James, this is Sandra.
James Hi.
Sandra Nice to meet you.
Man Sandra's a teacher in secondary school.
Sandra Why lucky?
James Well, you have really long summer holidays! Sandra Yes, that's what people always say. Perhaps you would like to teach my class one day. When you teach teenagers all year you need a long summer holiday.

3 Catherine Hello. We haven't met before, have we?
Luke No, I don't think so.
Catherine I'm Catherine, I'm Peter's sister.
Catherine Ah, Luke! You're the travel agent, aren't you?
Luke Yes, I am.
Catherine Peter's told me all about you. Listen, can you recommend a cheap holiday? I'd like to go somewhere hot. And I want to go in August. But when I say cheap, I mean cheap. Oh and I can't fly... because I'm terrified of flying...

4 Woman Deborah, can I introduce you to an old friend of mine, Lucy.
Deborah Hi Lucy.
Lucy Nice to meet you.
Woman Lucy's my hairdresser.
Deborah Ah, you're just the person I want to talk to, Lucy. What do you think of my colour?
Lucy Well...
Deborah No, come on, tell me the truth. Is it too bland?
Lucy Er... no. I think it's fine.
Deborah Are you sure?

5 Interviewer For those of you at home, I can promise you that Gemma looked very surprised. Were you happy with your progress?
Gemma Absolutely. At the end of the day we were singing in almost perfect harmony. It was amazing. In just one day we really were much better.
Interviewer Could you give us a little demonstration?
Martin & Gemma Oh, OK.

5.7

I arrived at Kraków airport with Kasia, my guide. Test number one. I had to get a taxi to the hotel. I said to the taxi driver, in Polish, 'To the Holiday Inn hotel, please.' - Prosze do hotelu Holiday Inn. No problem. The driver understood me. But then he started talking to me in perfect English. I felt a bit stupid.

We got to the hotel, checked in, and then we went to the hotel bar for test number two. A waitress came up to us and I said 'Prosze piwo' that is, a beer please. Then the waitress said something in Polish and I understood her. She said 'Big! I said. I was so happy that I could understand her. I really enjoyed that beer.

Next we went out into the street for test three: asking for directions. I decided to ask for directions to a chemist, because I knew the word for chemist, apteka. I stopped a woman who looked friendly and I said, in Polish, 'Excuse me please, is there a chemist's near here? No problem. But then she started talking really fast and pointing. I tried to listen for left or right or anything I could understand but no. I couldn't understand anything. I was sure that Kasia was going to give me zero for this test!

I was feeling less confident now. We went back to the hotel for test number four: making a phone call. Kasia gave me a phone number and told me to ask to speak to her friend. His name was Adam. I dialled the number. A woman answered the phone. 'Is Adam there?' I said hopefully. 'Adam nie ma,' she said. I understood that! Adam's not in. I wanted to say 'When will he be back?' but I could only say 'When home?' Kiedy domu? And I didn't understand her answer. So I said thank you and goodbye very politely. Kasia smiled, so I thought, well, not bad.

Finally, test five: asking the time. I knew this test was going to be very hard. Numbers in Polish are incredibly difficult and I've always found telling the time is impossible. But I had a brilliant idea. I stopped a man in the street and said, 'Excuse me, what's the time?' I couldn't understand the answer but I just said, 'Sorry, can I see your watch please?' He showed it to me. Twenty past seven. Perfect!

How well did I do in the tests? Well, Kasia gave me five out of ten for language and eight for imagination. So can you learn a language in a month? Not Polish, definitely!
5.12
SA Can I help you?
Allie Yes, I really like this sweater. Do you have it in a medium?
SA Let’s see... we have it in red in a medium.
Allie No, I want it in black.
SA Just a minute, I’ll go and check. Here you are. A black medium. Do you want to try it on?
Allie No, thanks. I’m sure it’ll be fine. How much is it?
SA 43.38.
Allie It says 39.99.
SA Yes, but that doesn’t include sales tax—that’s 8.5% extra.
Allie Oh, OK. Do you take MasterCard?
SA Yes, of course.

5.15
Mark Allie! You look great, as usual. How was your morning?
Allie Really good. First I went shopping, and then I went to the Museum of Modern Art.
Mark What did you think of it?
Allie It was wonderful. But I didn’t have enough time to see it all. Never mind.
Mark Maybe next time.
Allie What a lovely evening!
Brad Hi, Allie. How was the shopping?
Allie Great, thanks.
Brad Hi Mark. Did you like the museum? I hope you didn’t get lost again!
Mark Hey, I didn’t know you two were friends already.
Allie We met this morning. I got lost. I was trying to find Union Square—and suddenly Brad appeared.
Brad So I took her to my favourite coffee shop.
Mark Allie, what would you like to drink? Allie I’d like a cocktail please. A margarita.
Brad What a good idea. I’ll have one too. Mark, could you get us a couple of margaritas?
Mark Oh, so now I’m the waiter, am I?
Brad So tell me about the museum, Allie. What was your favourite painting?

6.11
Presenter Welcome to this morning’s edition of What’s the problem? Today we’re talking about friends, so if you have a problem with one of your friends, call us now. And if you’re listening to the programme and you think you can help with any of the problems then just send an e-mail to our website. Our e-mail address is whatproblem@radio4talk.com. Our first caller today is Barbara. Hello Barbara.
Barbara Hello.
Presenter What’s the problem?
Barbara Well, I have a problem with a friend called Jonathan (that’s not his real name). Well, Jonathan often goes out with me and my friends. The problem is that he’s really mean.
Presenter Mean!
Barbara Yes, he never pays for anything. When we have a drink he always says he doesn’t have any money or that he’s forgotten his money. So in the end of one of us always pays for him. At first we thought, ‘Poor Jonathan, he doesn’t have much money’. But it’s not true. His parents work, and he works on Saturdays in a shop—so he must have some money. Do you think we should say something to him?
Presenter Thanks Barbara. I’m sure you’ll soon get some e-mails with good advice. OK, our next caller is Kevin from Birmingham. Hello, Kevin.
Kevin Hi.
Presenter What’s the problem?
Kevin Yes, my problem is with my best friend. Well, the thing is, he’s always flirting with my girlfriend.
Presenter Your best friend flirts with your girlfriend?

6.17
Mark Bless you! Are you OK?
Allie It’s just a cold. I had a bad headache this morning, but I feel better now.
Mark Listen. I’m really sorry about last night.
Allie What do you mean?
Mark At the party. I got kind of angry at Brad. He was really annoying me.
Allie Oh, I think he’s very nice.
Mark Yeah, women always think so.
Allie Don’t worry, Mark. Brad’s not my type.
Mark So what is your type, Allie?
Allie You know what my type is. Dark hair, 34 years old, lives in San Francisco.
Mark Listen, tomorrow’s your last day. I want to do something special. What would you like to do?
Listening

Allie I don’t mind. You choose.
Mark How about a boat trip around the bay? We could do that in the morning, and then have a nice dinner in the evening.
Allie That sounds fantastic.
Mark It’s too bad you can’t stay longer.
Allie Yes, it’s a pity – this week has gone so quickly. I feel I’ve just arrived and now I’m going home.
Mark Well, I’m going to make sure tomorrow is a really special day.

7.1
Interviewer What exactly is your phobia, Scott?
Scott Well, the medical name is Felophobia or Gavorphobia.
Interviewer And what does that mean exactly?
Scott It means I’m afraid of cats.
Interviewer Cats?
Scott Yes.
Interviewer How long have you had this phobia?
Scott Since I was a child.
Interviewer And how did it start?
Scott When I was five or six years old, I remember going to a friend’s house and I saw a cat on the stairs. And the cat was looking at me, well staring at me. I went to touch it, and it bit me. And since then I’ve always been afraid of cats.
Interviewer What happens if you see a cat?
Scott Well, I start to feel very nervous, my hearts beats quickly. And I have to go away very quickly from where the cat is. For example, if I see a cat in the street, I always cross to the other side.
Interviewer What do you do?
Scott I’m a doctor.
Interviewer Is your phobia a problem for you in your work?
Scott Yes, sometimes. For example, if I go to a house and there is a cat I have to ask the people to put the cat in another room. I can’t be in the same room as a cat.
Interviewer Have you ever had any treatment for your phobia?
Scott Yes, I’ve just started going to a therapist. I’ve had three sessions.
Interviewer How’s it going?
Scott Well, now I can look at a photo of a cat without feeling nervous or afraid. And I can touch a toy cat. The next step will be to be in a room with a real cat.
Interviewer Do you think you will ever lose your phobia of cats?
Scott I hope so. I’m optimistic. Who knows, maybe one day I’ll have a cat as a pet.

7.5
Presenter Good evening and welcome to Film of the week. Tonight we are going to see Sofia Coppola’s film Lost in Translation. This film came out in 2003, and it gave the young film director her first Oscar nomination. Before it starts, Anthony, can you tell us a bit about her?
Anthony Well, of course as you know, Sofia Coppola is the daughter of Francis Ford Coppola, so you could say that she was born with a camera in her hand. She was born in New York in 1971 while her father was making the film The Godfather, and in fact she actually appeared in the film – she was the little baby in the baptism scene.

After she left school she decided to become an actress, but her career as an actress didn’t last long. When her father made The Godfather part III, he gave his daughter a part in the film. She played Mary Corleone, the Godfather’s daughter. But it was a disaster and the film critics wrote terrible things about her. So she stopped being an actress and she went to the California Institute of Art where she studied fine arts and photography. Then she decided to become a film director.

1999 was a really big year for her. She directed her first film, The Virgin Suicides, and this time the critics thought she was great. She also got married, to the film director Spike Jonze – but they separated after a few years.

And then in 2003 she made her next film, which is the one we’re going to see now called Lost in Translation. Lost in Translation was the film which made Sofia Coppola famous. For this film she became the first American woman to be nominated for an Oscar for best director, although she didn’t win it.

Presenter Thank you very much Anthony. And now, let’s watch Lost in Translation.

7.6
Interviewer How old are you in the photograph, Melissa?
Melissa Twelve or thirteen, I think.
Interviewer Did you like school?
Melissa Not really.
Interviewer Why not?
Melissa Because I didn’t like any of the subjects. Well, that’s not quite true, I liked English, but that was the only lesson I used to look forward to. I didn’t like maths, didn’t like science at all, and I hated PE. I used to argue with the PE teacher all the time. She used to make us do impossible things, things we couldn’t do, like climbing ropes and jumping over the horse. I think she just wanted to humiliate us.

Interviewer Were you a ‘good girl’ at school?
Melissa It depends what you mean by ‘good’. I didn’t smoke, I didn’t use to write graffiti on the walls or anything like that. But I was a bit of a rebel. I used to break rules all the time, and of course the teachers didn’t like that.

Interviewer What sort of rules did you break?
Melissa Well, the school was very strict about the school uniform – we had to wear a blue skirt, and the skirt had to cover our knees. I used to make the skirt shorter. And then I sometimes used to wear blue socks and a black sweater, instead of a grey sweater, and grey socks. The teachers used to get really angry; I just thought it was silly.

Interviewer Why?
Melissa Well, there were a lot of American TV programmes and films about lawyers at the time, and I used to think that it would be fun to argue with people all day.

Interviewer So why did you become a primary school teacher?
Melissa Lots of reasons. But I think the main reason is that both my parents were teachers and they both used to tell me, when you grow up and get a job don’t be a teacher. So as I was a rebel, I did exactly the opposite.

7.11
Presenter Good afternoon, and welcome to another edition of Science Today. In today’s programme we are going to hear about women inventors. When we think of famous inventors we usually think of men, people like Alexander Graham Bell, Guglielmo Marconi, Thomas Edison. But as Sally will tell us, many of the things which make our lives easier today were invented by women.

Sally That’s absolutely right. Let’s take the dishwasher for example. This was invented by a woman called Josephine Cochrane in 1886. She was a rich American who gave a lot of dinner parties. But she was annoyed that her servants used to break plates and glasses when they were washing them after the party. So, Josephine decided to try and invent a machine which could wash a lot of plates and glasses safely. Today the dishwasher is used by millions of people all over the world.

The car was invented by a man, but it was a woman, Mary Anderson, who in 1903 solved one of the biggest problems of driving. Until her invention, it was impossible for drivers to see where they were going when it was raining or snowing. The name of her invention? Windscreen wipers.

A fantastic invention that definitely improved the lives of millions of people was disposable nappies. They were invented by a woman called Marion Donovan in 1950. Anybody who has a small baby will know what a big difference disposable nappies make to our lives. Today more than 55 million nappies are used every day in the world.

A few years later in 1956, Bette Nesmith Graham was working as a secretary. She used to get very frustrated and angry when she made typing mistakes. In those
days if you made a mistake you had to get a new sheet of paper and start again from the beginning. She had a brilliant idea, which was to use a white liquid to paint over mistakes. Her invention is called Tippex today. Mrs. Graham was a divorced mother and her invention made her a very rich woman.

And finally... policemen, soldiers, and politicians all over the world are protected by something which was invented by a woman. In 1966 Stephanie Kwolek invented kevlar, a special material which was very light but incredibly strong, much stronger than metal. This material is used to make the bullet-proof vest. Her invention has probably saved thousands of lives.

Presenter Thanks very much Sally. So... if you thought that everything was invented by men, think again.

Mark Hey, excuse me! Could you take a photo of us, please?
Allie Sure. Are you ready?
Man Say cheese!

83

Newsreader Last Friday, Sven, a company lawyer from Stockholm was looking forward to relaxing two days in the mountains. He and his wife had booked a skiing weekend in a luxury hotel. But the weekend didn’t work out exactly as they had planned. Sven worked until late on Friday evening. His office was on the 12th floor. When he finished, at 8 o’clock, he locked his office and got into the lift... and he didn’t get out again until Monday morning!

Sven I pressed the button for the ground floor and the lift started going down but then stopped. I pressed the button again but nothing happened. 8.15

Newsreader Meanwhile Sven’s wife, Silvia, was waiting for her husband to come home.

Silvia I was very worried when he didn’t come home on Friday evening and I couldn’t understand why his mobile wasn’t working. I phoned the police and they looked for him but they couldn’t find him anywhere. I thought maybe he was with another woman.

Newsreader So Sven was in the lift the whole weekend from Friday evening until Monday morning. At eight o’clock, when the office workers arrived, they phoned the emergency number and somebody came and repaired the lift.

Sven I was very happy to get out. I hadn’t eaten since Friday afternoon and I was very hungry. It’s lucky that I am not claustrophobic because the lift was very small. The first thing I did was to phone my wife to say that I was OK.

Newsreader Sven will soon be the fittest man in his office — from now on he’s going to take the stairs every day — even though it’s 12 floors.

8.6

Interviewer Hello. Could I ask you a few questions? We’re doing some research.
David Sure. What’s it about?
Interviewer Well, we want to find out if you are a morning or evening person.
David OK, fine.
Interviewer OK and what’s your name?
David David Cope.
1A  word order in questions

Questions with do / does / did in present and past simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question word</th>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive (= verb)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>live with your parents?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What food</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>Jenny</td>
<td>like Chinese food?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- In the present simple use the auxiliary verb do / does to make questions.
- In the past simple use the auxiliary verb did to make questions.
- In these questions the subject goes after the auxiliary verb.
- Remember ASI (auxiliary, subject, infinitive) or QUASI (question word, auxiliary, subject, infinitive) to help you with word order in present or past simple questions.

Questions with be, present continuous, and going to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question word</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>(adjective, noun, verb + ing, etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Ana</td>
<td>a student?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>talking about?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>going to live!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- In questions with be, make questions by inverting the verb and the subject.

1B  present simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / you / we / they</th>
<th>he / she / it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I usually work at home.</td>
<td>Danny knows me very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They don't live near here.</td>
<td>It doesn't often rain here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you smoke?</td>
<td>Does Nina like music?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I do. / No, I don't.</td>
<td>Yes, she does. No she doesn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Use the present simple for things you do every day, week, year, or which are always true.
- Remember the spelling rules for 3rd person singular s:
  - work > works add s
  - study > studies consonant + y; y and add ies
  - finish > finishes sh, s, ch, x; add es
  - go > goes do > does have > has
- Remember the word order in questions (ASI and QUASI – see 1A above).

1C  present continuous: be + verb + ing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>you / we / they</th>
<th>he / she / it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>I’m working</td>
<td>He</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You</td>
<td>She’s working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>I’m not working</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You</td>
<td>It</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We’re not working</td>
<td>She isn’t working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>Are you working? Yes, I am. No, I’m not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is he working? Yes, he is. No, he isn’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Use the present continuous for things happening now, at this moment.
- My brother is working in Germany.
- A What are you doing?
- B I’m sending a text message to Sarah.

- Remember the spelling rules for the -ing form:
  - cook > cooking
  - study > studying
  - live > living
  - run > running

1D  defining relative clauses with who, which, where

A cook is a person who works in a restaurant.
A clock is a thing which tells the time.
A post office is a place where you can buy stamps.

- Use relative clauses to explain what a place, thing, or person is or does.
- That’s the woman who won the lottery last year.
- This is the restaurant where we had dinner last week.
- Use who for a person, which for a thing, and where for a place.

126
1A
a Put the word or phrase in the right place in the question.
   How are you? (old)
   1 you going to go out this evening? (are)
   2 Where does your work? (sister)
   3 What music are you listening? (to)
   4 Does finish at 8.00? (the class)
   5 Why you write to me? (didn’t)
   6 Do you often to the cinema? (go)
   7 What this word mean? (does)
   8 What time did arrive? (your friends)

b Put the words in the right order to make questions.
   you live where do? Where do you live?
   1 you a do have car?
   2 older is brother your you than?
   3 often he how to write does you?
   4 this time start does what class?
   5 last go where you summer did?
   6 languages how you many do speak?
   7 see you are going to evening her this?
   8 for waiting who you are?

1B
a Write sentences and questions with the present simple.
   he / usually get up late  He usually gets up late.
   1 Anna / like music [2]
   2 she / have a lot of hobbies [+]  
   3 I / get on very well with my sister [−]
   4 my brother / know me very well [−]
   5 they / have any children [?]  
   6 the film / finish late [?]  
   7 he / go out twice a week [+]  
   8 we / often talk about politics [−]

b Complete with a verb in the present simple.
   get on not have listen live open not talk not work
   He lives in a flat.
   1 _____ the banks _____ in the afternoon?
   2 My sister _____ many friends.
   3 We usually _____ to the news in the car.
   4 She’s quite shy. She _____ much.
   5 _____ Jane _____ well with her boss?
   6 My cooker’s new, but it _____ very well.

1C
a Write sentences with the present continuous.
   It / rain. [−] It isn’t raining.
   1 Hey! you / stand on my foot! [+]
   2 they / play very well today [−]
   3 what / you study at the moment [?]  
   4 we / think of you [+]  
   5 she / wear make-up [?]  
   6 they / make / a big mistake [+]  
   7 your brother / work in London now [?]  
   8 she / talk to her father at the moment [−]

b Complete the sentences with the present simple or present continuous.
   The girl in the painting is playing the guitar. (play)
   1 My dog’s not dangerous. He _____.
   2 Why _____ you _____ sunglasses? It _____!
   3 You can turn off the radio. I _____ to it.
   4 I _____ to go to the bank. I _____ any money.
   5 Be careful! The baby put that pencil in her mouth!
   6 A _____ you usually _____ at weekends?
      B No, we normally _____ out.
   7 A What _____ you _____ here?
      B I meet Emma. Look, there she is.

1D
a Complete the definitions with who, which, or where.
   It’s the person who serves you in a café.
   1 They’re people who make you laugh.
   2 It’s a machine which cuts the grass.
   3 It’s an animal which lives in the sea and has eight legs.
   4 It’s a room where people try on clothes.
   5 He’s the person who helps you with your luggage.
   6 It’s a kind of food which keeps vampires away.

b Match the definitions and the pictures.

Study Link MultiROM  www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/pre-intermediate
2A past simple regular and irregular

| Infinitive | Past  
|------------|-------
| work       | worked |
| stay       | stayed |
| like       | liked  |
| study      | studied |
| stop       | stopped |

Did you stay in a hotel? Yes I did.
Did you go on holiday? No, I didn’t.

- Use the past simple to talk about finished actions in the past.
- The past simple is the same for all persons.
- Use the infinitive after Did…? and didn’t for negatives and questions.
- To make the past simple of regular verbs add -ed. Remember the spelling rules.
- Many common verbs are irregular in past simple, for example go > went. See the irregular verb list on p.155.

2B past continuous: was / were + verb + ing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+</th>
<th>-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>was working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>was working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>were working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Was he working? Yes, he was.
Were they working? Yes, they were.

- Use the past simple continuous to describe an action in progress at a specific moment in the past.
  At six o’clock last night I was driving home.
  On April 1st I was staying with some friends in the country.

2C questions with and without auxiliaries

Questions with an auxiliary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What music</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which CD</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>buy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>go with?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- To make questions in the past and present simple, we normally use the auxiliary verbs do / does / did + the infinitive.
- What music do you like? NOT What music you like?
- The normal order for questions in the present and past is QUASI (See p.126 1A).

Questions without an auxiliary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>After the concert?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>happened</td>
<td>the Eurovision Song Contest?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which country</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>their songs?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who</td>
<td>writes</td>
<td>Who writes their songs?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When the question word (Who? What? Which? How many?) is the subject of the verb in the question, we do not use an auxiliary (do, does, did) and the verb is in the third person.
- Who writes their songs? NOT Who does write their songs?

2D so, because, but, although

**because and so**

She was driving fast **because** she was in a hurry. (reason)
She was in a hurry **so** she was driving fast. (result)

Hannah spoke to the DJ **because** they didn’t like the music. (reason)
They didn’t like the music **so** Hannah spoke to the DJ. (result)

- Use **because** to express a reason.
- Use **so** to express a result.

**but and although**

She tried to stop **but** she hit the man.

**Although** she tried to stop, she hit the man.
It was late **but** she couldn’t sleep.
She couldn’t sleep **although** it was late.

- Use **but** and **although** to show a contrast.
- **Although** can go at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.
2A
a Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple.
Two summers ago we **had** (have) a holiday in Scotland. We **drove** (drive) there from London, but our car **broke** (break) down on the motorway and we **spent** (spend) the first night in Birmingham. When we **got** (get) to Edinburgh we **could not** (not can) find a good hotel – they **were** (be) all full. We **did not** (not know) what to do but in the end we **found** (find) a bed and breakfast and we **stayed** (stay) there for the week. We **saw** (see) the castle, **went** (go) to the Arts Festival, and we **bought** (buy) a lot of souvenirs. We **wanted** (want) to go to Loch Ness but we **had not** (not have) much time and it **was** (be) quite far away. The weather **was** (be) good, but it **started** (start) raining the day we **left** (leave).

b Re-order the words to make questions.

**Where did you go on holiday?**
2 How did you go there?
3 **Well, it was great.**
4 **How was the food?**
5 **I think I had a good time.**

**With some friends.**
1 **Where did you stay?**
2 **What did you do?**
3 **What did you think of it?**
4 **What did you like about it?**
5 **Who did you go with?**

**In a hotel.**
1 **Why didn’t you like it?**
2 **How much did it cost?**
3 **How much did you spend?**
4 **What did you think of it?**
5 **How was the service?**

**Because it was very modern and quite expensive.**
1 **How much did the plane cost?**
2 **Where did you go?**
3 **What did you do?**
4 **How much did you spend?**
5 **What did you think of it?**

**£500.**

2B
a Complete with a verb in the past continuous.
1 He met his wife when he **was working** (work) in Japan.
2 They **were waiting** (wait) for us when we arrived.
3 She **was wearing** (wear) a coat when she went out.
4 What **were you doing** (do) at 7:30 last night?
5 I **was not listening** (not listen) when you gave the instructions.
6 I **was driving** (drive) when you phoned me.
7 It **wasn’t raining** (not rain) when I woke up this morning.

b Put the verbs into the past simple or past continuous.

**She arrived** (arrive) when we **were having** (have) dinner.
1 I **broke** (break, play) my arm when I **was playing** (play) football.
2 You **saw** (saw) fast when the police **were chasing** (catch) you.
3 It **snowed** (snow, leave) when we **left** (leave) the pub.
4 I **drove** (drive) to the airport because I **wasn’t going** (go) to work.
5 When you **called** (call, talk) me, I **was talking** (talk) to my boss.

2C
a Cross out the wrong question.

What **you did / did you** do last night?
1 What **happened / did happen** to you?
2 What **means this word / does this word mean**?
3 How many people **came / did come** to this class?
4 Which bus **goes / does go** to the airport?
5 Which actor **won / did win** the Oscar this year?
6 What **said the teacher / did the teacher say**?

b Write the questions. Do you know the answers?

Who **said** ‘Hasta la vista, baby’? (say)
1 How many Formula 1 world championships **did Ayrton Senna win**?
2 Which US **president** won the Nobel Peace Prize in 1990? (win)
3 Who **directed** the film Reservoir Dogs? (direct)
4 When **became** Nelson Mandela president of South Africa? (become)
5 Who **wrote** The Lord of the Rings? (write)
6 What **did Sting do** before he became a singer? (Sting / do)

2D
a Complete with so, because, but, or although.

We couldn’t find a taxi **so** we walked home.
1 It was very cold, she wasn’t wearing a coat.
2 I woke up in the night **there was a noise**.
3 I called him **his mobile was turned off**.
4 She’s very nice, she doesn’t have many friends.
5 There was nothing on TV **I went to bed**.
6 All the cafés were full **it was a public holiday**.
7 She wanted to be a doctor **she failed her exams**.

b Match the sentence halves and complete with so, because, but, or although.

1 I was tired last night **so**
2 She drove quite fast **because**
3 His English isn’t very good **although**
4 I phoned him at his office **when**
5 She’s not feeling very well **but**
6 I didn’t write to you **although**
7 He called the hotel **if**
8 I took her to a restaurant **so**

E
A I lost your e-mail address
B it was her birthday
C they didn’t have any rooms
D he lived in the UK for two years
E I went to bed early
F she was in a hurry
G he was in a meeting
H she can’t go to class tonight
3A going to

+ I’m going to work in a restaurant.
  She’s going to meet me at the airport.

− We aren’t going to stay very long.
  He isn’t going to like the weather there.

? Are you going to find a job?
  When is your brother going to visit you?

- Use (be) going to + infinitive to talk about future plans and predictions.
  I’m going to work in the UK for six weeks. (plan)
  I think it’s going to rain this afternoon. (prediction)
- When you use going to go, you can omit to go.
  I’m going to go to university next year or I’m going to go to university next year.

present continuous for future arrangements

+ I’m seeing some friends tonight.
  We’re having dinner at their house tomorrow.

− She isn’t leaving until Friday.
  They aren’t coming to the party.

? What are you doing this evening?
  Is she meeting us at the cinema?

- You can also use the present continuous for future arrangements which we have planned for a fixed time or place.
- Don’t use the present simple for this. NOT I see some friends tonight.
- The present continuous is especially common with the expressions tonight, tomorrow, this weekend, etc. and with these verbs: go, come, meet, see, leave, and arrive.

3B will, won’t + infinitive (predictions)

+ I will be late. You will be late.
  He will be late. She won’t be late.
  It will be late. We won’t be late.
  They will be late. They won’t be late.

- Constructions: ‘ll = will; won’t = will not

- Use will / won’t + infinitive for future predictions.
  (You can also use going to. See 3A above.)
- The future of there is / are = there will be; the future of I can = I’ll be able to NOT I’ll can.

3C will (promises, offers, and decisions)

Decisions: I won’t have the fish, I’ll have the steak. We’ll take the 6.30 train.

Offers: I’ll help you with your homework.
  Shall I open the window?

Promises: I’ll always love you.
  I won’t tell anyone.

- Use will / won’t + infinitive for making decisions, offering, and promising.
  I’ll help you with those bags. NOT I help you.
- Use Shall I...? or Shall we...? when an offer is a question.
  Shall I pay? Shall we call you tonight at 7.00?

3D review of tenses: present, past, and future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>I live in the city centre. She doesn’t smoke.</td>
<td>Things that happen always or usually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>He’s looking for a new job. I’m leaving tomorrow.</td>
<td>Things that are happening now or in the near future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>We saw a good film last night. We didn’t do anything yesterday.</td>
<td>Finished actions in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td>He was working in Paris. What were you doing at 7.00?</td>
<td>Actions that were in progress at a past time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going to + infinitive</td>
<td>I’m going to see Tom tonight. It’s going to rain.</td>
<td>Future plans and predictions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will / won’t + infinitive</td>
<td>You’ll love New York. I’ll phone her later. I’ll help you. I’ll pay you back tomorrow.</td>
<td>Predictions, instant decisions, offers, and promises.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3A

a Complete with going to + a verb.

be buy get married not go not pass see snow stay

What film are you going to see tonight?
1 He's very lazy. I'm sure he ______ his exams.
2 ______ your sister ______ a new flat?
3 You ______ in class 3 next year.
4 We ______ camping next summer We ______ in a hotel.
5 A When _____ they _____? B In October.
6 It's very cold, but I don't think it ______ today.

b Cross out the wrong form. Tick (✓) if both forms are possible.

I see / I'm seeing my boyfriend tonight.
1 What are you doing / do you do after class today?
2 Is it going to rain / raining tomorrow?
3 We're going to go away / going away this weekend.
4 I'm meeting / I meet Susan this evening.
5 Where are you going to stay / staying in Paris?
6 Hurry up! We're going to be late / being late.
7 She's going to come / coming tonight.

3B

a Write sentences and questions with will / won't.

Use contractions where you can.

it / be difficult ✓ It'll be difficult.

1 they / win
2 the meeting / be long
3 he / get the job
4 you / see him at the party
5 it / be impossible to park
6 you / like the film
7 she / love the chocolates we bought her
8 there / be a lot of traffic at 6.00
9 you / can find a good job

b Complete the predictions with will / won't + a verb.

be do have last make

I don't think we'll have another war. This one is probably the last.'
Richard Nixon, 1971 (talking about the Vietnam war)
1 'He ______ never ______ anything important in life.'
Albert Einstein's teacher (said to his father) 1985
2 'No film about the Civil War ______ ever ______ any money.'
An MGM executive 1945 (about the film Gone With The Wind.)
3 'It's a bad joke. It ______.'
Coco Chanel (about the miniskirt)
4 'I don't think there ______ a woman Prime Minister in my lifetime.'
Margaret Thatcher, 1976

3C

a Match the sentences.

It's cold in here.
1 I'm thirsty.
2 I have a headache.
3 This exercise is hard.
4 I'm hungry.
5 These bags are heavy.
6 I left my wallet at home.
7 I need that photo urgently.

G A I'll help you to do it.
B Shall I make you a sandwich?
C Shall I carry one for you?
D I'll lend you some money.
E F I'll send it by e-mail now.
G Shall I shut the window?
H Shall I turn off the music?
I I'll get you a glass of water.

b Complete the sentences with will / won't or shall / will + a verb.

call forget have help pay take tell

A What would you like? B I'll ______ the pasta.
1 A I can't open this window. B ______ you?
2 A It's a secret. B I ______ anyone, I promise.
3 A When will I see you again? B ______ you tonight.
4 Can I borrow £50? I ______ you back tomorrow.
5 A It's my birthday next week. B Don't worry. I ______.
6 A I don't feel very well. B ______ I ______ you home?

3D

a Complete the sentences with an auxiliary verb.

Where ______ you have lunch yesterday?
1 ______ you often remember your dreams?
2 When ______ your mother coming to stay?
3 ______ you see the match last night?
4 Who ______ you phoning last night?
5 Who ______ you think ______ win the elections?
6 ______ your brother like classical music?
7 What ______ you going to cook tonight?
8 ______ it raining when you left?

b Put the verb in the right form.

A What ______ we doing tonight? (do)
B We ______ dinner with my sister. (have)
A But we ______ dinner with her last week! (have)
B Yes, but she ______ to tell us some good news. (want)
A Oh, OK then. 4 ______ some champagne? (buy)
B It's 7.00! What ______ to you? (happen)
A When ______ home I ______ to buy the champagne. (come, stop). And then I ______ Jim in the shop… (meet)
B Well hurry up. We ______ late! (be)
4A present perfect (experience) + ever, never

- Use the present perfect to talk about past experiences when you don't say exactly when they happened.
  I've been to London. NOT I've been to London last year.
  My brother has worked abroad.

- For regular verbs the past participle is the same as the past simple (+ed). For irregular verbs see p.155.

- We often use the present perfect with ever (= in your life until now) and never.
  Have you ever been to London? No, I've never been there.

  Compare the present perfect of go and be.
  He's gone to Paris. = He's in Paris now.
  He's been to Paris. = He went to Paris and came back.

present perfect or past simple?

A Have you ever been to Mexico?  B Yes, I have.
A When did you go there?  B I went last year.

4B present perfect + yet, just, already

- Use yet + the present perfect in + and ? sentences to ask if something that you think is going to happen has happened.
- Put yet at the end of the sentence.

- Conversations often begin in the present perfect (with a general question) and then change to the past simple (with questions asking for specific details, when, where, who with, etc.)
- Use the past simple to ask / say exactly when something happened.

A Have you finished your homework yet?  B No, not yet. I haven't finished yet.

A Would you like a coffee?  B No thanks. I've just had one.
A My sister's just started a new job.

- Use just in + sentences to say that something happened very recently.
- Put just before the main verb.

A Do you want to see this film?  B No, I've already seen it three times.
A Shall I buy a newspaper?  B No, I've already bought one.

- Use already in + sentences to say that something happened before now or earlier than expected.
- Put already before the main verb.

4C comparative adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>shorter</td>
<td>the shortest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>the biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>busier</td>
<td>the busiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxed</td>
<td>more relaxed</td>
<td>the most relaxed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>the best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>the worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>further</td>
<td>the furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4D superlatives (+ ever + present perfect)

- Use the + superlative adjectives to say which is the biggest, etc. in a group.
  It's the highest mountain in Europe. She's the best in the class.
- We often use a superlative with the present perfect.
  Russia is the coldest place we've ever been to.
  It's the most beautiful church I've ever seen.
4A

a Write sentences or questions with the present perfect.
   he / ever / be there? Has he ever been there?
   1 you / ever buy / clothes from that shop?
   2 I / not read / the newspaper today.
   3 We / never be / to the new shopping centre.
   4 your brother / live abroad / all his life?
   5 They / go / to live in South America.
   6 She / never fly / before.
   7 He / not meet / his wife's family.
   8 you / eat / in this restaurant before?

b Right (✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong sentences.
   He's got up late this morning.  x  He got up late this morning.
   1 We've been to Ireland last year.
   2 Have you ever gone to Paris?
   3 Jane's gone to the bank. She'll be back soon.
   4 I like your shoes. Where did you buy them?
   5 I've seen that film last week.
   6 I spoke to him a minute ago.
   7 My sister's a writer. She's written five novels.
   8 World War II has ended in 1945.

4B

a Order the words to make sentences.
   1 made have you yet your bed?
   2 gone already to work she's.
   3 just we're a cup of coffee had.
   4 I found a job haven't yet.
   5 sent me just an he's e-mail.
   6 house already sold they've their.

b Write sentences or questions with already, just, or yet.
   he / arrive (already) He's already arrived.
   1 I / have / breakfast (just)
   2 you / finish your homework? (yet)
   3 the film / start (already)
   4 I / not meet / his girlfriend (yet)
   5 they / get married (just)
   6 You're too late. He / go home (already)
   7 you / speak to him? (yet)
   8 I / not read his new book (yet)

4C

a Write comparative sentences.
   London is / expensive / Manchester.
   London is more expensive than Manchester.
   1 my sister is / thin / me.
   2 I'm / busy / this week / last week.
   3 Cambridge is / far from London / Oxford.
   4 I did the second exam / bad / the first.
   5 Chelsea played / well / Arsenal.
   6 the men in my office work / hard / the women.
   6 my new job is / boring / my old one.

b Rewrite the sentences so they mean the same. Use as... as.
   Mike is stronger than Jim. Jim isn't as strong as Mike.
   1 Cindy is taller than Kelly.
   2 Your case is heavier than mine.
   3 Mexico City is bigger than London.
   4 Football is more popular than tennis.
   5 Children learn languages faster than adults.
   6 You work harder than me.
   7 France played better than England.
   Adults don't.
   I don't.

4D

a Complete the sentences with a superlative.
   Is this the noisiest city in the world? (noisy)
   1 Yesterday was ________ day of the year. (hot)
   2 This is ________ time to drive through the city centre. (bad)
   3 She's ________ person in the class. (friendly)
   4 This is ________ part of the exam. (important)
   5 The ________ month to visit is September. (good)
   6 It's ________ city in the world. (polluted)
   7 The ________ I've ever flown to is Australia. (far)

b Write sentences with ever.
   1 it / hot country / I be to
   It's the hottest country I've ever been to.
   2 he / unfriendly person / I / meet
   3 it / hard exam / he / do
   4 they / expensive shoes / she / buy
   5 it / long book / I / read
   6 she / beautiful girl / I / see
   7 it / bad meal / I / have
5A uses of the infinitive (with to)

**infinitive + to**

- I want to go to the party.
- I need to buy some new clothes.
- It'll be nice to meet some new people.
- It's important not to be late.

**Use to + the infinitive after:**
- some verbs (want, need, would like, etc.) See Verb Forms p. 154.
- adjectives
  - It isn't easy to find a job. Nice to meet you.
- The negative infinitive is not to + verb.
  - Try not to be late tomorrow.

**infinitive of purpose**

- A Why did you go to the party? B To meet new people.
- I went to the party to meet new people.

- Use to + the infinitive to say why you do something.
  - I came to this school to learn English. NOT for learn English.

**5B verb + -ing**

**Eating** outside in the summer makes me feel good.
- I love reading in bed.
- I'm thinking of buying a new car.

- Use verb + ing:
  - as the subject of a sentence
    - Smoking is bad for you.
  - after some verbs, (like, love, hate, enjoy, etc.) See Verb Forms p. 154.
  - I hate getting up early.

- after prepositions
  - He left without saying goodbye.
- Remember the spelling rules for the -ing form (See p. 126 1C)

**5C have to, don't have to, must, mustn't**

**have to, don't have to**

- She has to get up at 7.00 every day.
- You have to drive on the left in the UK.
- We don't have to wear a uniform at this school.
- He doesn't have to work on Saturdays.
- Do I have to buy a grammar book?
  - Does she have to study tonight?
- Don't contract have or has.
  - I have to go. NOT I've to go.

- Use have to + infinitive to talk about rules and obligations, or to say something is necessary.
- Use don't have to + infinitive to say there is no obligation, or something is not necessary.
- Use do / does to make questions and negatives.
  - Do I have to go? NOT Have I to go?

**must / mustn't**

- You must do your homework tonight.
- She must tidy her room before she goes out.
- You mustn't smoke in class.
- They mustn't leave their bags here.

**Contraction: mustn't = must not**

- Use must + infinitive to talk about rules and obligations.
- You must turn off your mobile phones before coming into class.
- must / mustn't are the same for all persons. It is not often used in questions (have to is more common).
- Use mustn't + infinitive to say something is prohibited.
- You mustn't smoke here.
- You can use mustn't or can't to talk about rules.
- You mustn't park here. You can't park here.

**5D expressing movement: go, etc. + preposition**

- The man went up the steps and into the church.
- I ran over the bridge and across the park.
- He drove out of the garage and along the street.

- Be careful with in / into and out / out of. Use into / out of + noun, but if there isn't a noun just use in or out.
  - Come into the living room. Come in.
  - He went out of the house. He went out.

**Must** and have to are very similar, but there is a small difference. We normally use have to for a general obligation (a rule at work or a law). We normally use must when the speaker imposes the obligation (for example, a teacher to students or a parent to children). But often you can use either.

**Mustn't** and don't have to have completely different meanings. Compare:
- You mustn't go = You can't go. It's prohibited.
- You don't have to go = You can go if you want, but it's not obligatory/necessary.
5A
a Complete with to + a verb.
1. I'm planning ________ to have a holiday next month.
2. ________ do not drive go learn leave not make meet
3. A Hi, I'm Dagmara.
   B I'm Renata. Nice ________ you.
4. ________ What do you want ________ this evening?
5. I need ________ to the bank. I don't have any money.
7. I'd really like ________ a new language.
8. Be careful ________ too fast on the way home.
9. She's decided ________ her husband.

b Match the sentence halves.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>They want to go to Australia</th>
<th>A to celebrate getting the job.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. He's going to have a party</td>
<td>B to get some petrol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. You'll need a visa</td>
<td>C to book our tickets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Don't forget to phone the restaurant</td>
<td>D to visit their family there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I stopped at the garage</td>
<td>E to tell them where we are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. She's gone to the supermarket</td>
<td>F to go to China.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I went to the travel agent's</td>
<td>G to book a table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I'll send them a text message</td>
<td>H to get some food for tonight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5B
a Complete the sentences with a verb in the -ing form.

be do go learn remember study talk teach

1. I don't really enjoy ________ exercise.
2. ________ teenagers is very hard work.
3. You can't sing well without ________ to breathe properly.
4. My sister spends hours on the phone ________ to her boyfriend.
5. I hate ________ the first to arrive at parties.
6. ________ by train is cheaper than by plane.
7. I'll go on ________ until dinner time.

b Put the verbs in the -ing form or infinitive.

I like ________ to music. (listen)
1. ________ yoga is good for your health. (do)
2. We've decided ________ to the party. (not go)
3. We won't take the car. It's impossible ________ (park)
4. I'm not very good at ________ maps. (read)
5. You can borrow the car if you promise ________ slowly. (drive)
6. Have you finished ________ your homework? (do)
7. I don't mind ________ but I hate ________ (cook, wash up)

5C
a Write sentences with the right form of have to.

I / work on Saturday □ I don't have to work on Saturday.

1. Jane / work very hard □
2. you / wear a uniform □
3. my sister / go to school □
4. I / finish this now □
5. we / get up early tomorrow □
6. Harry / work tomorrow □
7. we / hurry or we'll be late □

b Complete the sentences with have to, don't have to, or mustn't.

We ________ work tomorrow. It's a holiday.

1. You ________ touch those animals. They're dangerous.
2. We ________ take the bus to school. It's too far to walk.
3. The concert is free. You ________ pay.
4. It's late. I ________ go now.
5. You ________ leave the door open - the cats will come in.
6. You ________ come if you don't want to. I can go on my own.
7. In Britain you ________ drive on the left.
8. You ________ be very tall to play football.

5D
a Cross out the wrong preposition.

My mobile stopped working when we went ________ a tunnel.

1. She ran to / down the lake, and jumped ________ of the water.
2. If you go ________ the church, you'll see my house on the left.
3. He walked ________ the street until he got to the chemist's.
4. The plane flew ________ the town and then landed.
5. The policeman walked ________ to me, but then he stopped.
6. We drove ________ of the bridge and ________ into the city centre.
7. The cyclists went ________ ________ under the track three times.

b Complete the sentences with in, into, out, or of.

He jumped ________ his car and drove away.

1. I like to go ________ on a Friday night.
2. Come ________. The door's open.
3. He took his passport ________ his jacket.
4. He walked ________ the cafe and ordered a coffee.
6A if + present, will + infinitive (first conditional)

If I miss the bus, I’ll get a taxi.
She won’t be angry if you tell her the truth. What will you do if it rains?

- Use if + present, will + infinitive to talk about a possible future situation and its consequence.
- The if clause can come first or second.
  I’ll come if you like. OR If you like, I’ll come.

You can also use the imperative or can.
If you miss the bus, get a taxi.
If you miss the bus, you can get a taxi.

6B if + past, would + infinitive (second conditional)

If a bear attacked me, I’d run away.
If I didn’t have children, I wouldn’t live in the country.
Would you take the manager’s job if they offered it to you?

- Use if + past, would + infinitive to talk about an improbable / impossible or hypothetical future situation and its consequence.
  If a bear attacked me, I’d run away. = I’m imagining this situation. It’s very improbable.
  would / wouldn’t is the same for all persons.
- The contraction of would is ‘d (I’d, you’d, he’d, etc.) and of would not is wouldn’t.

First and second conditionals

Compare the first and second conditionals:
Use the first conditional for possible future situations.
If I have time tomorrow, I’ll help you. (= maybe I will have time)
Use the second conditional for improbable / impossible or hypothetical situations.
If I had time tomorrow, I’d help you. (= I won’t have time.)

6C may / might + infinitive (possibility)

We might have a picnic tomorrow, but it depends on the weather.
I might not go to the party. I haven’t decided yet.
I may go to the party, but I’m not sure.
I may not have time to do everything today.

Might not and may not aren’t usually contracted.

- Use might / may and might not / may not + infinitive to talk about a future possibility.
  It might / may rain. = it’s possible that it will rain.
- Might / May (not) is the same for all persons, I might / may, he might / may, we might / may, etc.

You can also use May I... / May we... to ask for permission.
May I use your phone? (= can I use your phone).

6D should / shouldn’t (advice)

I think you should change your job.
The government should do more for old people.

- Use should / shouldn’t + infinitive to give somebody advice or say what you think is the right thing to do.
  You should cut your hair. = I think it would be a good idea.
- should / shouldn’t + infinitive is the same for all persons.
- You can also use ought to / ought not to instead of should / shouldn’t.
  You ought to change your job.
6A

a Match the sentence halves.

If you leave now   C if you don’t start now.
1 It will be cheaper B will you give it back to me?
2 If I don’t see you later, C you’ll catch the 8.00 train.
3 You’ll learn more D if you go by bus.
4 If you get the job, E I’ll see you on Friday.
5 You won’t have time F if you come to every class.
6 If I lend you this book, G will you earn more money?

b Complete with the correct form of the verbs.

If you _______ tell me your secret, I _______ won’t tell anybody. (tell, not tell)
1 If we _______ walking, the bus _______. (start, come)
2 He _______ angry if you _______ him. (be, not tell)
3 If I _______ it down, I _______ it. (not write, not remember)
4 _______ you _______ me if you _______ any news? (call, get)
5 If you _______ her nicely, she _______ you. (ask, help)
6 You _______ if you _______. (not pass, not study)

6B

a Match the sentence halves.

You’d feel much better C we could go shopping.
1 I’d enjoy the weekend more B I’d get a new job.
2 If you stayed for another day, C if you stopped smoking.
3 Would you wear it D if you went to live in China?
4 If I were you, E if I bought it for you?
5 I wouldn’t work F if I didn’t need the money.
6 Would you come with me G if I didn’t have to work on Saturday.

b Complete with the correct form of the verbs.

If I _______ a good job, I _______ move to the USA. (find, move)
1 We _______ the house if it _______ a garden. (buy, have)
2 If I _______ his number, I _______ him. (know, phone)
3 You _______ more if you _______ harder. (learn, work)
4 If you _______ for a week, you _______ see everything. (stay, can)
5 We _______ our son more often if he _______ nearer. (see, live)
6 I _______ to the doctor’s if I _______ you. (go, be)

6C

a Match the sentence halves.

Take your umbrella. D You might fall.
1 Let’s buy a lottery ticket. A You might fall.
2 Phone the restaurant. B It might not be your size.
3 Don’t stand on the wall. C We might get lost.
4 Let’s take a map. D It might rain.
5 Try the shirt on. E I might be late.
6 Don’t wait for me. F You might cut yourself.
7 Be careful with that knife. G It might be closed on Sundays.

b Complete the sentences with might + a verb.

be cold be ill be in a meeting go to the cinema
not have time not like it win

I’m not sure what to do tonight. I _______ go to the cinema.

1 Kate wasn’t in class today. She _______
2 He isn’t answering his phone. He _______
3 It’s an unusual film. You _______
4 I don’t know if I’ll finish it. I _______
5 It’s a difficult match but we _______
6 Take your coat. It _______

6D

a Complete with should or shouldn’t.

You _______ stop smoking.
1 You _______ eat red meat.
2 You _______ work 12 hours a day.
3 You _______ lose a bit of weight.
4 You _______ eat more fruit.
5 You _______ drink a lot of coffee.
6 You _______ put salt on your food.
7 You _______ start doing some exercise.

b Complete the sentences with should or shouldn’t + a verb.

drive go leave relax study walk wear

We _______ leave early. There might be a lot of traffic later.

1 You _______ a jacket. It’s quite cold today.
2 I _______ tonight. I have an exam tomorrow.
3 You _______ alone in that part of the city. Get a taxi.
4 She _______ more. She’s very stressed.
5 People _______ so fast when it’s raining.
6 You _______ to bed early tonight. You look really tired.
7A present perfect + for and since

A Where do you live now?  B In Manchester.
A How long have you lived there?  B I’ve lived there since 1990.
A Where do you work?  B In a primary school.
A How long have you worked there?  B I’ve worked there for five years.

- Use the present perfect + for or since to talk about actions and states which started in the past and are still true now.
  I’ve lived in Manchester since 1990. = I came to live in Manchester in 1990 and I live in Manchester now.
- Use How long? to ask questions about the duration of an action or a state.

7B present perfect or past simple (2)?

| How long has Tarantino been a director? | He’s been a director since the 1980s. |
| How many films has he made? | He’s made six films. |
| How long was Hitchcock a director? | He was a director for 50 years. |
| How many films did he make? | He made 52 films. |

- Use the present perfect + how long?, for, and since to talk about a period of time from the past until now.
  How long have you been married? I’ve been married for 10 years. (= I’m married now.)
- Use the past simple + how long? and for to talk about a finished period of time in the past.
  How long was he married? He was married for two years. (= He’s not married now.)

7C used to / didn’t use to

+ I used to wear glasses.
  You used to wear glasses.
  He used to wear glasses.
  She used to wear glasses.
  It used to wear glasses.
  We used to wear glasses.
  They used to wear glasses.

- I didn’t use to wear glasses.
  You didn’t use to wear glasses.
  He didn’t use to wear glasses.
  She didn’t use to wear glasses.
  It didn’t use to wear glasses.
  We didn’t use to wear glasses.
  They didn’t use to wear glasses.

- Use used to / didn’t use to + infinitive for things that happened repeatedly or over a long period of time in the past, but are usually not true now, for example for things which happened when you were a child.
  I used to have long hair. I used to play in the street. I didn’t use to have a TV.
- You can also use the past simple here. I had long hair when I was a child.

7D passive: be + past participle

Present

| Risotto is made with rice. |
| These offices are cleaned every morning. |

- It isn’t made with pasta.
- They aren’t cleaned on Saturdays.

Past

| Guernica was painted by Picasso. |
| The pyramids were built by the Egyptians. |

- It wasn’t painted by Dali.
- They weren’t built by the Greeks.

- Make the present passive with am / is / are + the past participle.
- Make the past passive with was / were + the past participle.
- Use by to say who did the action.
  The Lord of the Rings was written by Tolkien.
7A

a Write questions with How long and the present perfect.
you / be married        How long have you been married?
1 he / have his car       ?
2 your parents / lived in this house   ?
3 you / be a teacher      ?
4 she / know her boyfriend  ?
5 Poland / be in the EU    ?
6 you / have your dog      ?
7 Tim / be frightened of water ?

b Answer the questions in a. Use the present perfect + for or since.
I've been married since 1986.
1 He                          three years.
2 They                        a long time.
3 I                           1990.
4 She                         May.
5 It                          2004.
6 We                         about two years.
7 He                          he was a child.

7B

a Right (✔) or wrong (✖)? Correct the wrong sentences.
She is married since 1990. ✖ She's been married since 1990.
1 He has left school last year.
2 I lived in Brighton for two years, but then I moved to London.
3 She lives in Hollywood since 2004.
4 My sister has had her baby yesterday!
5 I work in a bank. I work there for twenty years.
6 The city has changed a lot since I was a child.
7 They're divorced now. They have been married for a year.

b Complete with the present perfect or past simple.
1 A Where does Joanna live now?
   B In Washington.
   A How long                  there? (she / live)
   B For six months. She       there in February. (move)
2 A When                    ? (Picasso / die)
   B In 1977, in Paris I think.
   A How long                  in France? (he / live).
   B For a long time. He       Spain when he was 25. (leave)
3 A My sister and her husband get on very well.
   B How long                  married? (they / be)

7C

a Look at how James has changed. Write five sentences about how he was THEN.

THEN

He didn't use to be slim.
1 short hair.
2 quite fat.
3 glasses.
4 a uniform.
5 wine.

NOW

b Make sentences with used to, didn't use to, or did ... use to.

you / have long hair ☑
Did you use to have long hair?
1 where / you / go to school ☑
2 I / like vegetables when I was a child ☑
3 my sister / hate maths at school ☐
4 what / you / do in the summer ☐
5 they / live near here ☐
6 this building / be a cinema ☑
7 your brother / study here ☐

7D

a Complete with present or past passive.
The Eiffel Tower was built in 1889. (build)
1 All the singer's clothes were made specially for her. (make)
2 The grass is cut every month. (cut)
3 Australia was discovered by Captain Cook in 1770. (discover)
4 This morning I was wakened up by the neighbour's dog. (wake)
5 Cricket was played in the summer in the UK. (play)
6 These songs were recorded last year. (record)
7 Most children were educated in state schools. (educate)

b Rewrite the sentences in the passive.
Shakespeare wrote Hamlet in 1603.
Hamlet was written by Shakespeare in 1603.
1 Last night the police stopped us.
   Last night we were stopped by the police.
2 American teenagers eat a lot of fast food.
A lot of fast food is eaten by American teenagers.
3 Toulouse Lautrec painted At the Moulin Rouge.
   At the Moulin Rouge was painted by Toulouse Lautrec.
4 The marketing manager organizes weekly meetings.
Weekly meetings are organized by the marketing manager.
5 The Italians make Fiat cars.
   Fiat cars are made by the Italians.
8A something, anything, nothing, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>people</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>anyone</th>
<th>nobody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>someone</td>
<td>anyone</td>
<td>nobody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things</td>
<td>something</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>places</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Use somebody, something, someone, etc. when you don’t say exactly who, what, or where.
  Somebody broke the window.
  I went somewhere nice at the weekend.
- Use anything, anybody, anywhere in questions or with a ? verb
  I didn’t do anything last night. NOT I didn’t do nothing.

8B quantifiers
too, too much, too many

I’m stressed. I have too much work.
My diet is unhealthy. I eat too many cakes and sweets.
I don’t want to go out. I’m too tired.

- Use too, too much, too many to say ‘more than is good’.
- Use too + an adjective NOT I’m too much tired.
- Use too much + uncountable nouns (e.g. coffee, time).
- Use too many + countable nouns (e.g. cakes, people).

enough

Do you eat enough vegetables?
I don’t drink enough water.
This dress isn’t big enough.

- Use enough before a noun to mean ‘all that is necessary’.
- Use enough after an adjective.

a little, a few

A  Do you take sugar?
B  Yes. Just a little.
A  Do you want some chips?
B  Yes, but just a few.
A  I eat a little meat.
I drink very little coffee.
B  Can you buy a few bananas?
He has very few friends.

- Use a little / very little and a few / very few to talk about small quantities.
- Use a little / very little with uncountable nouns and a few / very few with countable nouns.

8C word order of phrasal verbs

Every morning I get up at 8.00.
Then I turn on the radio.
I always have to look for my glasses.

- A phrasal verb = verb + particle (preposition or adverb) get up, turn on, look for.
1 Some phrasal verbs don’t have an object.
   Come in and sit down.
   What time do you get up?
2 Some phrasal verbs have an object and are separable.
   Put on your coat.
   Turn off the TV.
   With these verbs you can put the particle (on, off, etc.) before or after the object.
   Put on your coat OR Put your coat on.
   Turn off the TV OR Turn the TV off.
- When the object is a pronoun (me, it, him, etc.) it always goes between the verb and particle.
   Here’s your coat. Put it on. NOT Put on it.
   I don’t want to watch TV. Turn it off. NOT Turn off it.
3 Some phrasal verbs have an object and are inseparable.
   I’m looking for my keys.
   I’m looking for them.
   With these phrasal verbs, the verb (look) and the particle (for) are never separated.
   I looked after my little sister. NOT I looked my little sister after.
   I looked after her. NOT I hooked her after.

8D so, neither + auxiliaries

A  I love football.
B  So do I.
A  I went to university.
B  So did I.
A  I’m not married.
B  Neither am I.
A  I don’t smoke.
B  Neither do I.

- Use So do I / Neither do I, etc. to say that you have something in common with somebody.
- Use So + auxiliary + I with positive sentences.
  A I’m happy.  B So am I. NOT So I am.
- Use Neither + auxiliary + I with negative sentences.
  A I’m not hungry.  B Neither am I.  NOT Neither I am.

- The auxiliary you use depends on the tense.
  I love football.  So do I.
  I didn’t like the film.  Neither did I.
  I can swim.  So can I.
  I wasn’t very tired.  Neither was I.
  I’ve been to Spain.  So have I.
  I wouldn’t like to go there.  Neither would I.
8A
a Complete with something, anything, nothing, etc.
   Did you meet ________ last night?
1 Are you doing ________ tonight?
2 ________ phoned when you were out. He said he'd call back later.
3 I've seen your car keys ________ but I can't remember where.
4 Did ________ come while I was out?
5 Did you go ________ exciting last night?
6 I've bought you ________ for your birthday.
7 I knocked at the door but ________ answered.
8 We went shopping but we didn't buy ________.

b Answer with Nobody, Nowhere, or Nothing.
   1 What did you do last night?
   2 Where did you go yesterday?
   3 Who did you see?

8B
a How much / many meat do you eat?
1 I drink ________ coffee.
2 I eat ________ biscuits.
3 I don't drink ________ water.
4 I can't go. I am ________ busy.
5 You work ________
6 I only drink ________ coffee.
7 I don't have ________ coffee.
8 He has ________ good friends.

b Complete the sentences with too, too much, too many, or enough.
   You eat ________ red meat. It isn't good for you.
   1 My father's not very fit. He doesn't do ________ exercise.
   2 I can't walk to work. It's ________ far.
   3 There are ________ cars on the roads today.
   4 I don't sleep ________—only five or six hours, but I really need eight.
   5 I was ________ tired to go out last night.
   6 There were ________ people at the party, so it was impossible to dance.

8C
a Complete the sentences with a particle from the box.
   after away back down (x2) for off on up
   Turn ________ your mobile before you come into class. ✓
   1 Turn ________ the radio. It's too loud.
   2 What time do you usually get ________ in the morning?
   3 John phoned when you were out. He'll call ________ later.
   4 My brother is looking ________ a new job.
   5 I think you should throw ________ those old jeans.
   6 I always try ________ new clothes before I buy them.
   7 I have to look ________ my little sister tonight.
   8 You should write ________ new words in your book.

b Tick the sentences in a where the particle (on, off, etc.)
   could also go after the object.

c Complete the sentences with it or them and a particle.
   away off (x2) on up (x3)
   1 I can't hear the radio. Turn ________ ________.
   2 Your clothes are all over the floor. Pick ________ ________.
   3 Here's your coat. Put ________ ________.
   4 What does this word mean? Look ________ ________.
   5 Your shoes are wet. Take ________ ________.
   6 I don't need those papers. Throw ________ ________.
   7 Don't watch the TV now. Turn ________ ________.

8D
a Complete B's answers with an auxiliary verb.
   A I like coffee
   B So ________ I.
   1 A I'm really hungry.
   B So ________ I.
   2 A I didn't go out last night.
   B Neither ________ I.
   3 A I was born in Liverpool.
   B So ________ I.
   4 A I don't smoke.
   B Neither ________ I.
   5 A I've been to Bangkok.
   B So ________ I.
   6 A I can't swim.
   B Neither ________ I.
   7 A I'd like to go to India.
   B So ________ I.
   8 A I saw a film last night.
   B So ________ I.

b Respond to A. Say you are the same.
   Use So… I or Neither… I
   A I don't like whisky.
   B Neither ________ I.
   1 A I live near the school.
   B ________ I.
   2 A I'm not afraid of snakes.
   B ________ I.
   3 A I went to bed early.
   B ________ I.
   4 A I haven't been to China.
   B ________ I.
   5 A I don't have any children.
   B ________ I.
   6 A I can speak three languages.
   B ________ I.
   7 A I always have breakfast.
   B ________ I.
## Past Perfect

**Constructions**: I'd = I had  I hadn't = I had not

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Past Perfect Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>You had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>He had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>She had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>It had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>We had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>They had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Yes, I had</td>
<td>No, I hadn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>Yes, you had</td>
<td>No, you hadn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>Yes, he had</td>
<td>No, he hadn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>Yes, she had</td>
<td>No, she hadn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>Yes, it had</td>
<td>No, it hadn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>Yes, we had</td>
<td>No, we hadn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>Yes, they had</td>
<td>No, they hadn't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

- Suddenly he remembered that he had seen the film before.
- Use the past perfect when you are already talking about the past, and want to talk about an earlier past action.
- When I woke up the garden was all white. It had snowed in the night.
- I arrived at the coffee bar twenty minutes late and my friends had already gone.
- Make the past perfect with had / hadn't + the past participle.
- The past perfect is the same for all persons.

**Be careful**: I'd can be I had or I would.

## Reported (or Indirect) Speech

### Reported Sentences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Speech</th>
<th>Reported Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'I love you.'</td>
<td>He said (that) he loved her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I want to see you again.'</td>
<td>He told her (that) he wanted to see her again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Use reported speech to say what another person said.
- I love you.  He said (that) he loved her.

- Other tenses change like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Speech</th>
<th>Reported Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'I can help you.'</td>
<td>He said (that) he could help me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I'll phone you.'</td>
<td>He told me (that) he would phone me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I met a girl.'</td>
<td>He told me (that) he had met a girl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I've broken my leg.'</td>
<td>He said (that) he had broken his leg.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *that* is optional after *say* and *tell*.
- Pronouns also change in reported speech, for example I changes to *he* / *she*, etc.

### Reported Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Speech</th>
<th>Reported Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Do you want to dance?'</td>
<td>He asked her if she wanted to dance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Where do you live?'</td>
<td>He asked her where she lived.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- In reported questions:
  - the tenses change in exactly the same way as in sentences, eg present to past, etc.
  - we don't use *do / did*.

**What do you want?**

He asked me *what I wanted*.

**Can you sing?**

She asked him if he could sing.

**Are you a student?**

He asked her if she was a student.

**Have you seen the film?**

She asked him if he had seen the film.

- *do / did* in reported questions:
  - the word order is subject + verb.

**You can use **said** or **told** in reported speech but they are used differently.**

- You can't use *said* with an object or pronoun
  - NOT He said her *he* loved her
- You must use *told* with an object,
  - *He* told her *that* he loved her NOT he told that...
9A

a Match the sentence halves.

1. When our friends arrived
   2. I took the sweater back because
   3. Jack didn’t come with us.
   4. I turned on the TV
   5. Jenny was nervous because
   6. When the film started
   7. At work I suddenly remembered that

D. He had made other plans.
B. I realized that I’d seen it before.
C. It was the first time she had flown.
D. I’d forgotten my keys.
E. I hadn’t turned off the cooker.
F. He had bought me the wrong size.
G. We hadn’t finished cooking the dinner.
H. To see what had happened.

b Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in the past simple or past perfect.

We _________________ a table in the restaurant because we _________________ booked. (not get, not book)

1. I _________________ Maria because she _________________ her hair. (not recognize, cut)
2. My friend _________________ to tell me I _________________ my jacket in the car. (phone, leave)
3. When I _________________ the TV, the match _________________ . (turn on, finish)
4. She _________________ me the book because she _________________ it yet. (not lend, finished)
5. He _________________ all his exams because he _________________ at all. (fail, not study)
6. When we _________________ home we saw that somebody _________________ the kitchen window. (get, break)

9B

a Write the sentences in reported speech.

He said, ‘I love you.’
He told her that he _________________ her.

1. ‘I’m tired.’
   She said that she ___________________.

2. ‘I don’t like rock music.’
   He told her he ___________________.

3. ‘I’ll book a table.’
   He said ___________________.

4. ‘I’ve bought a new car.’
   Paul told us that ___________________.

5. ‘I live in the city centre.’
   She said that she ___________________.

6. ‘We can do it.’
   They said that ___________________.

7. ‘I saw the film on TV.’
   Julie said that ___________________.

b Make reported questions.

Do you want to dance? He asked her if she _________________.

1. ‘Do you like football?’
   Mike asked me if I ___________________.

2. ‘What music do you like?’
   I asked her what music ___________________.

3. ‘Are you tired?’
   She asked me ___________________.

4. ‘Have you been to New York?’
   I asked them ___________________.

5. ‘Where did you live before?’
   He asked me ___________________.

6. ‘Can you swim?’
   She asked him ___________________.

7. ‘Where are you from?’
   I asked him ___________________.
### Classroom Language

#### You Hear

**a.** Match the phrases and pictures.

1. Match the phrases and pictures.
2. Match the phrases and pictures.
3. Match the phrases and pictures.
4. Match the phrases and pictures.
5. Match the phrases and pictures.
6. Match the phrases and pictures.
7. Match the phrases and pictures.
8. Match the phrases and pictures.
9. Match the phrases and pictures.
10. Match the phrases and pictures.

#### You Say

**a.** Match the phrases.

**A**

1. How do you say in English?
2. How do you spell it?
3. Could you repeat that, please?
4. How do you pronounce it?
5. What does mean?
6. Can I have a (piece of paper), please?
7. Which page is it?
8. Sorry I’m late.
10. Have a good weekend!

**B**

1. Very bad.
2. 84.
3. A sheep.
5. Yes. S-H-E-E-P.
6. That’s OK. Sit down.
7. (Jip)
8. You too. See you on Monday.
9. S-H-E-E-P.
10. Here you are.

**b.** Cover column B. Remember the answers. Then cover column A. Remember the phrases.

#### You Read

**a.** Match the instructions and pictures.

**1. This is a book.**
2. a
3. b
4. c
5. am

**A**

6. Nice to meet you.
7. Where are you from?
8. cat
dog
9. mouse

**B**

10. play
do
go

**c.**

- circle
- cross out
- copy the rhythm
- match
- underline
- tick
- cross
- cover the text
- complete
- choose

**b.** Cover the instructions. Look at the pictures and remember them.

P.5

---

**Study Link**

www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/pre-intermediate
1 Personality adjectives

a Match the adjectives and definitions.

friendly /ˈfrendli/ funny generous lazy shy talkative

A person who talks a lot is ...  Opposite
A person who likes giving presents is ...  
A person who never does any work is ...  
A person who makes people laugh is ...  
A person who is open and nice is ...  
A person who is nervous and uncomfortable meeting new people is ...

b Complete the Opposite column.

extrovert hard-working mean quiet /ˈkwaɪət/ serious /ˈsiərəs/ unfriendly

c Cover the Adjective and Opposite columns. Look at the definitions and say the adjective and its opposite.

p.6

2 Opposite adjectives

a Match the words and pictures 1–8.

boring /ˈbɔːrɪŋ/ crowded /ˈkrɔːdɪd/ dangerous /ˈdɛnʒərəs/ near
far modern noisy polite /ˈpɒlət/ polluted

b Match these adjectives with their opposites in a.

clean empty exciting /ˈɪntərɛstɪŋ/ near old quiet rude safe

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Remember the adjectives and their opposites.

d Put the adjectives with the correct prefix to make opposites.

un happy
im healthy /ˈhelθi/ patient /ˈpeɪʃənt/ possible tidy /ˈtaɪdi/

e Test a partner. A say an adjective. B say the opposite.

p.47
**The body**

a Match the words and pictures.
- head /hed/
- face
- hair
- arm(s)
- shoulder(s) /ʃɔʊldə/
- neck
- eye(s) /aɪ/
- mouth /maʊθ/
- nose
- hand(s)
- finger(s)
- ear(s)
- stomach /ˈstʌmək/
- lip(s)
- foot (plural feet)
- knee(s) /kni:/
- back
- leg(s)
- heart /hɑːt/
- brain
- teeth (singular tooth)
- toes /təʊz/
- tongue /tʌŋ/

b Cover the words and test yourself or test a partner.
Point to a part of the body for your partner to say the word.

c What part(s) of the body do we use to...?
see _______ hear _______ smell _______ kiss _______ bite _______
touch /tɒtʃ/ _______ think _______ feel _______ kick _______ smile _______

d Test a partner. Ask What do you use to see? etc.

⚠️ In English we use personal pronouns (my, your, etc.) with parts of the body, not the.
Give me your hand. NOT Give me the hand.
1 Phrases with go

a. Match the verbs and pictures.
- go abroad /əˈbrɔːd/
- go swimming / sailing
- go sightseeing
- go camping
- go by car / bus / plane / train
- go to the beach
- go out at night
- go away for the weekend
- go for a walk

b. Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

2 Other holiday activities

a. Complete the verb phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>hire</th>
<th>meet</th>
<th>rent</th>
<th>spend</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>sunbathe /ˈsʌnbaːθ/</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>walk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stay in a hotel / campsite</td>
<td>stay on the beach</td>
<td>stay in an apartment</td>
<td>stay a good time</td>
<td>stay in the mountains / around the town</td>
<td>stay friends</td>
<td>stay a car</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photos</td>
<td>souvenirs</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td>____</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Test yourself. Cover the verbs. Remember the phrases.

3 The weather

a. Match the words and pictures.

- sunny
- windy
- foggy
- cloudy /ˈklɔudi/
- rain
- snow
- hot
- cold
- boiling
- freezing

b. Test a partner. Imagine you were on holiday last week. Point to a picture.
   A. Say What was the weather like?
   B. Answer in the past simple.
   It was sunny. It rained.
### 1 at / in / on

Complete the chart with at, in, or on.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLACE</th>
<th>TIME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Countries and cities</td>
<td>Months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France, Paris</td>
<td>February, June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooms</td>
<td>Seasons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the kitchen</td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buildings</td>
<td>Years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a shop, a museum</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed spaces</td>
<td>Times of day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a park, a garden</td>
<td>morning, afternoon,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a car</td>
<td>evening (not night)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport</td>
<td>Dates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bike, a bus, train,</td>
<td>March 1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plane, a ship (not car)</td>
<td>Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a surface</td>
<td>Tuesday, New Year’s Day,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the floor, a table,</td>
<td>Valentine’s Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a shelf, the balcony,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the roof, the wall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school, home, work,</td>
<td>Times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university the airport,</td>
<td>6 o’clock, half past two,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the station, a bus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop a party, the door</td>
<td>7.45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Look at the chart for a few minutes. Then test a partner:

A (book open) say a place or time word, e.g. Paris, Tuesday, etc.

B (book closed) say the preposition (at, in, or on).

Swap roles.

### 2 Prepositions of movement

Match the prepositions and pictures.

- under (the railway line)
- along (the street)
- round / around (the lake)
- through /θru:/ (the tunnel)
- into (the shop)
- across (the road)
- over (the bridge)
- up (the steps)
- past (the church)
- towards /taˈwɜːrdz/ (the lake)
- down (the steps)
- out of (the shop)

b Cover the prepositions. Where did the dog go? It went down the steps…
1 Opposite verbs

a. Match the verbs and pictures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buy (a house)</td>
<td>sell (house)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win (a match)</td>
<td>lose (match)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend (money to somebody)</td>
<td>borrow (money from somebody)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find /luz/ (your keys)</td>
<td>lose (keys)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push (the door)</td>
<td>pull (the door)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass (an exam)</td>
<td>fail (exam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget (a name)</td>
<td>remember (a name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn on (the TV)</td>
<td>turn off (the TV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send (an e-mail)</td>
<td>receive (e-mail)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss (a train)</td>
<td>arrive (at the station)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach (a language)</td>
<td>learn (language)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Find the opposite verbs in the box. Write them in the Opposite column.

- borrow (from somebody)
- catch
- fail
- get / receive
- learn
- leave
- lose (x2)
- pull
- remember
- sell
- turn off

p. 31

c. Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Remember the verbs and their opposites.

2 Confusing verbs

a. Match the verbs and pictures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>a bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>earn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a prize</td>
<td>a salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somebody</td>
<td>somebody for the first time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>meet something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a cake</td>
<td>an exam, test, course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch, dinner</td>
<td>housework, the washing up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a noise</td>
<td>sport, yoga, aerobics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that something good will happen</td>
<td>for a bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>look at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>a photo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>look like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>your mother</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Cover the words and phrases and look at the pictures.
Test yourself or a partner.

Study Link MultiROM www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/pre-intermediate
Clothes

a Match the words and pictures.

Singular clothes
- a dress
- a top
- a skirt /skɔːt/
- a shirt
- a belt
- a T-shirt
- a sweater /ˈswetə/
- a suit /sət/
- a coat /kəʊt/
- a tie /teɪt/
- a scarf
- a tracksuit
- a jacket
- a hat
- a cap
- a blouse

Plural clothes
- pyjamas /ˈpɒdʒəmæz/
- trousers
- jeans
- shorts
- shoes /ʃuːz/
- boots
- trainers
- socks
- tights

b Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

Verbs used with clothes

a Match the phrases and pictures.
- get dressed
- wear (a black hat)
- take off (her boots)
- try on (a dress)
- put on (her coat)

b Cover the phrases. What is she doing in each picture?

p.150
a Match the animals and the pictures.

**insects**
- bee
- butterfly
- fly
- mosquito
- spider
- wasp /wɒsp/  

**farm animals**
- bull
- chicken
- cow /kəʊ/   
- goat /ɡəʊt/   
- horse
- pig
- rabbit
- sheep

**wild animals**
- bear
- camel
- crocodile
- dolphin
- elephant
- giraffe
- gorilla
- kangaroo
- lion
- mouse (plural mice)
- shark
- tiger
- whale

**birds**
- duck
- eagle
- swan /swɔn/  

b Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.
a Match the phrases and the pictures.

**get + adjective**
- get divorced
- get angry
- get fit
- get married
- get lost

**get + comparative**
- get older
- get worse
- get better

**get = buy / obtain**
- get a job
- get a ticket
- get a flat
- get a newspaper

**get + preposition (phrasal verbs)**
- get on (well) with
- get on (opposite off)
- get into (opposite out of)
- get up

**get = arrive**
- get to work
- get home
- get to school

**get = receive**
- get a salary
- get a letter
- get a present
- get an e-mail

b Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

p.71
Phrasal verbs

a Match the sentences and the pictures.
- We often stay up late at the weekend.
- The match will be over at about 5.30.
- I don't get on with my father.
- I need to give up smoking.
- Please put away your clothes.
- Don't throw away that letter!
- Turn down the music! It's very loud.
- Turn up the TV! I can't hear.
- He looked up the words in a dictionary.
- Could you fill in this form?
- I want to find out about hotels in Madrid.
- Please pick up that towel.

b Cover the sentences and look at the pictures.
Remember the phrasal verbs.

c Look at these other phrasal verbs from Files 1–7. Can you remember what they mean?
- get up turn on (the TV)
- come back turn off (the TV)
- go back put on (clothes)
- hurry up take off (clothes)
- go away try on (clothes)
- go out give back (something you’ve borrowed)
- come in take back (something to a shop)
- sit down call back (later)
- stand up pay back (money you’ve borrowed)
- wake up write down (the words)

Green = no object. The verb and the particle (on, up, etc.) are never separated.
I get up at 7.30.

Blue = + object. The verb and the particle (on, up, etc.) are never separated.
Look for your keys. NOT Look your keys for.

Red = + object. The verb and the particle (on, up, etc.) can be separated.
Turn the TV on. OR Turn on the TV.

p.92
Verb forms

A Verbs + infinitive

decide to
forget to
help to
hope to
learn to
need to
offer to
plan to
pretend
promise to
*remember to
start
*try to
want to
would like to

We decided to go to France.
Don’t forget to turn off all the lights.
He helped her to start the car.
We hope to see you again soon.
I’m learning to drive.
I need to go to the bank. I don’t have any money.
He offered to take me to the airport.
They’re planning to get married soon.
He pretended to be ill, but he wasn’t really.
He promised to pay me back.
Remember to bring your dictionaries tomorrow.
She started to cry.
I’m trying to find a job, but it’s very hard.
I want to go home.
I’d like to buy a new car.

⚠️ start can be used with both the infinitive and verb + -ing with no real difference in meaning.

It started raining.
It started to rain.

start + -ing is more common when we talk about a habit or a longer activity.
I started working here in 1998.
When did you start playing the piano?

try and remember can also be used + ing but the meaning is different.
Why don’t you try doing yoga? = experiment with something
Do you remember meeting him last year? = remember something after it happened

After make and let use the infinitive without to.
Singing makes me feel good.
My parents don’t let me go out during the week.

B Verbs + -ing

enjoy
finish
go on (=continue)
hate
like
love
(don’t) mind
spend (time)
*start
stop

I enjoy reading in bed.
Have you finished getting dressed.
I have to go on working until 9 o’clock.
I hate getting up early.
I like having lunch in the garden.
I love waking up on a sunny morning.
I don’t mind cooking. It’s OK.
She spends hours talking on the phone.
I started reading this book last week.
Please stop talking.
### Irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought /brɔt/</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built /bɪlt/</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought /bɔt/</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>could /kəd/</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught /kɔt/</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done /dʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew /flɔː/</td>
<td>flown /flʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew /gruː/</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard /hɜːd/</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew /njuː/</td>
<td>known /nɔn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt</td>
<td>learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put /pʊt/</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read /rɛd/</td>
<td>read /rɛd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said /sed/</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw /sɔː/</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood /stɒd/</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took /tʊk/</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought /θɔt/</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw /θru/</td>
<td>thrown /θruːn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won /wʌn/</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vowel sounds

1. fish /fɪʃ/  
2. tree /triː/  
3. cat /kæt/  
4. car /kɑː/  
5. clock /klɒk/  
6. horse /hɔːs/  
7. bull /bʊl/  
8. boot /bʊt/  
9. computer /kəmˈpjuːtər/  
10. bird /bɜːd/  
11. egg /ɛɡ/  
12. up /ʌp/  
13. train /treɪn/  
14. phone /fəʊn/  
15. bike /baɪk/  
16. owl /əʊl/  
17. boy /boʊ/  
18. ear /ɛə/  
19. chair /tʃeə/  
20. tourist /ˈtʊərɪst/
# Sounds and spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>usual spelling</th>
<th>but also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i thin lips</td>
<td>English women&lt;br&gt;history kiss&lt;br&gt;busy decide&lt;br&gt;repeat gym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee feel teeth</td>
<td>people machine&lt;br&gt;ca teach mean&lt;br&gt;e she we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a hands hat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back catch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry match</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar far arms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a fast pass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o top lost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socks wrong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot box</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or boring more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai walk ball</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aw awful saw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u pull push</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo foot book</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look room</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bull</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo school choose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u rude use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ew new knew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er person verb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ir dirty shirt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ur nurse turn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bird</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many different spellings, always unstressed. Further nervous arrive polite&lt;br&gt;inventor agree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* especially before consonant + e

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>usual spelling</th>
<th>but also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e spell lend</td>
<td>friendly head&lt;br&gt;smell send&lt;br&gt;very red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u sunny mustn’t</td>
<td>someone enough&lt;br&gt;funny run&lt;br&gt;lucky cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a* face wake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai brain fail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ay away pay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o* open hope</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won’t so</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa coat goal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i* smile bite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y shy why</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high sights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou trousers round</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth blouse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ow towel down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>owl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oi coin noisy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boiling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oy toy enjoy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eer beer engineer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ere here we’re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear near fear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air airport stairs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair hair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are square careful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A very unusual sound.<br>Europe furious sure plural

/i:/ A sound between /i/ and /i:/<br>Consonant + y at the end of words is pronounced /i:/.<br>happy angry thirsty

/u:/ An unusual sound.<br>education usually situation
Consonant sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>usual spelling</th>
<th>but also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>p</strong></td>
<td>promise possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>copy cap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pp</strong></td>
<td>opposite appearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>b</strong></td>
<td>belt body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>probably job cap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bb</strong></td>
<td>rabbit rubber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>c</strong></td>
<td>camping across</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chemist’s stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>k</strong></td>
<td>skirt kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>neck kick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>g</strong></td>
<td>grow goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>forget begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gg</strong></td>
<td>foggy bigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>f</strong></td>
<td>find afraid safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enough laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>v</strong></td>
<td>video visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lovely invent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>over river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>t</strong></td>
<td>try tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>start late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>walked dressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>d</strong></td>
<td>did dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hand told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loved tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>s</strong></td>
<td>stops faster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>miss message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>place circle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>z</strong></td>
<td>zoo lazy freezing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reason lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has toes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sh</strong></td>
<td>shut shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wash finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sugar sure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>patient information (+ vowel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>th</strong></td>
<td>thing throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>healthy tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>maths both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>thumb</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ch</strong></td>
<td>chicken child beach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>beach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tch</strong></td>
<td>catch match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>t (+ure)</strong></td>
<td>picture future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>j</strong></td>
<td>jacket just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>generous teenager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jazz</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l</strong></td>
<td>little less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plan incredible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ll</strong></td>
<td>will silly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>leg</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>r</strong></td>
<td>really rest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>practice trainers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>written wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>rr</strong></td>
<td>borrow married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>w</strong></td>
<td>wet twins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>worried win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wh</strong></td>
<td>why which whale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>y</strong></td>
<td>yet year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>young yoga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>before u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>useful uniform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>m</strong></td>
<td>mountain modern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>remember smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mm</strong></td>
<td>summer swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monkey</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>n</strong></td>
<td>need nephew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>none any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>knees knock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nn</strong></td>
<td>funny dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sho</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ng</strong></td>
<td>tongue fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>along thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bring going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ng</strong></td>
<td>tongue fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>along thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bring going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ng</strong></td>
<td>tongue fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>along thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bring going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>h</strong></td>
<td>hit hate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ahead perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>who whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>house</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An unusual sound.
revision decision confusion usually garage
New ENGLISH FILE

The course that gets students talking

Fun, motivating lessons that work
The perfect balance of grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation, and skills to get your students speaking English with confidence.

A complete package for teachers and students
The Teacher's Book gives you the support you need, and all the components work together for more effective learning.

Common European Framework of Reference A2–B1

Teacher's Book
- Every lesson has:
  - full notes, with extras highlighted in colour.
  - ideas to help you teach classes of different abilities.
  - photocopiable Grammar and Communicative activities.
  - Plus a song in every File.

Video
- A unique teaching video.
- Brings the Practical English lessons to life.

MultiROM
- Home-study CD-ROM and audio CD in one.
- Interactive grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation, and video activities.
- ‘Listen, repeat, and answer’ audio practice.

Workbook
- Lesson by lesson revision and practice.
- Available with or without Key Booklet.

Class audio
- CDs or cassettes.

Website
- Interactive exercises and games at:
  www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/pre-intermediate

Study Link
Look out for the Study Link logo throughout the course. This shows links between components to make teaching and learning more effective.